

EventPro Software Installation Guide

Published Wednesday, February 3, 2021 © 2021 EventPro Softw are/Profit Systems Inc.

Table of Contents

Welcome to the Installation Guide	1
Get Your Software: Cloud	2
Send Data for Conversion	
From EventPro Standard Edition	
From EventPro Enterprise Edition	
Review Cloud Requirements	
Citrix Options	
Upgrade Receiver to Workspace	
Install Citrix	
Access from Desktop Citrix Workspace	
Run Citrix Workspace & Add Account	
Add Apps to Citrix Workspace	
Run EventPro	
Subsequent EventPro Login	
Access from Cloud Gateway Browser	
Login to Cloud Gateway	
Run Citrix	
Add Apps to Citrix StoreFront	
Activate Desktop Citrix	
Run EventPro	
Subsequent EventPro Login	
Change Your Password	
Cloud Password Policy	
Exit EventPro Cloud	
Update Cloud Software	
EventPro Cloud on Mobile Device	56
Get Your Software: Installed	66
Options and Requirements	
Minimum System Requirements	
Installation Types	
Authentication Modes	
Active Directory Integration	
Standalone Install	
Download EventPro Components	
Install SQL Server	
Configure SQL Server	
Install Data Updater	
Create New Client Database	
Restore Existing Database over New	
Install EventPro	

L

	First Login to EventPro	94
Netw	ork Install: Windows Authentication	96
	Create Active Directory Groups	97
	Install SQL Server	105
	Configure SQL Server	109
	Download EventPro Components	112
	Install Data Updater	113
	Create New Client Database	115
	Restore Existing Database over New	118
	Give Database Rights to Users	125
	Install EventPro to Server	135
	Share Installation Folder	141
	Install EventPro to Workstations	147
	Admin First Login to EventPro	153
	Create Security Roles	155
	Create Users	
	Create Internal Company & Contacts	
	User First Login to EventPro	
Netw	ork Install: Active Directory Integration	
	Create Active Directory Groups for Integration	
	Install SQL Server	175
	Configure SQL Server	
	Download EventPro Components	
	Install Data Updater	183
	Create New Client Database	
	Restore Existing Database over New	
	Give Database Rights to Users	
	Install EventPro to Server	
	Share Installation Folder	
	Install EventPro to Workstations	
	Admin First Login to EventPro	
	Create Internal Company	
	Set Default Account	
	Edit Administrator Security Role	
	Assign Security Roles to AD Groups User First Login to EventPro	
	Active Directory/EventPro Sync	
Notw	ork Install: SQL Authentication	
INCLW		
	Download EventPro Components	
	Install SQL Server	
	Configure SQL Server	
	Create SQL User	
	Install Data Updater	
	Create New Client Database	
	Restore Existing Database over New	
	Change SQL User	
	Install EventPro to Server	260

Share Installation Folder	265
Install EventPro to Workstations	265
Admin First Login to EventPro	271
Create Security Roles	273
Create Users	
Create Internal Company & Contacts	
User First Login to EventPro	278
Alternate Database Restore Process	280
EventPro Desktop Shortcuts	288
Update Software License	288
Update Your Software	291
Get Help	294
Copyright & Disclaimers	295
Index	297

Welcome to the Installation Guide

- This EventPro Software Installation Guide contains instructions that will assist you with installing your EventPro application.
- When purchasing EventPro, you chose either the **Cloud application** or the **On-Prem/Installed application**. Select the relevant link below to get started with your software:
 - o <u>Get Your Software: Cloud</u>²
 - o <u>Get Your Software: Installed</u>
- The EventPro Installation Manual was last published Wednesday, February 3, 2021.
- For more information about setting up and using EventPro Software, please consult the full <u>EventPro Software</u> <u>Manual</u>.

Get Your Software: Cloud

This chapter describes the process of accessing EventPro Software through the Cloud application.

- <u>Send Data for Conversion</u> (if required)
- <u>Review Cloud Requirements</u>
- <u>Citrix Options</u>
- Upgrade Receiver to Workspace
- Install Citrix 13
- Access from Desktop Citrix Workspace 15
- Access from Cloud Gateway Browser
- <u>Change Your Password</u> 50
- <u>Cloud Password Policy</u> 50
- Exit EventPro Cloud 51
- Update Cloud Software 55
- EventPro Cloud on Mobile Device 56

Send Data for Conversion

If you already have EventPro data, you can send it to Support in order to convert it for the EventPro cloud application.

The process of sending your data to EventPro Support will differ, depending on whether you are converting data from the EventPro **Standard** Edition (Microsoft **Access** Database) or the EventPro **Enterprise** Edition (**SQL** Database).

Check which Edition you own, and follow the applicable directions below:

- From EventPro Standard Edition
- From EventPro Enterprise Edition 3

If you will be starting from a new database, and do not require data conversion, you can skip this step.

From EventPro Standard Edition

- 1. Go into the data directory that stores your EventPro Databases.
 - a. In a multi-user network environment, this will be the server.
 - b. In a single-user environment, this will be your local drive.
- 2. Compress your main database which is named **data.mdb** by default into a zip file.

You can do this by right-clicking the file and selecting Send To > Compressed (zipped) Folder.

()	Open New Scan DATA.MDB Open With		
	Send To 🔸	1	Compressed (zipped) Folder
	Cut	8	Desktop (create shortcut)
	Сору	Ъ	Documents
		2	Mail Recipient
	Create Shortcut	-	(G:)
	Delete	P	(H:)
	Rename		(I:)
	Properties	٠	():)

- 3. **Rename** the zip file to your 6-digit User ID number, or your company name, or the name that your Support/Training Specialist has recommended.
- 4. Your Support/Training Specialist may have provided you with a link for uploading your data.
- 5. If not, use your 6-digit User ID and 4-digit Password to log into to the Client Login area of the EventPro website.
 - a. You would have received an email from EventPro containing the User ID and Password. If you do not know your company's User ID and Password, please consult with the program administrator. If you have misplaced your User ID and Password, an authorized user can contact Support or Training to retrieve them.
 - b. Under the Upload File tab, click Browse. Select your data zip file and click Open.
 - c. Wait until the transfer is completed.
- 6. As soon as the transfer is complete, email **<u>Support</u>** to let them know that your data has been sent.
- 7. If this process does not work for you, please contact <u>Support</u> for further assistance.

From EventPro Enterprise Edition

There are two main steps to getting your EventPro Enterprise data to Support/Training.

1. First, you will create a backup of your database and compress it into a zipped folder.

Create a Database Backup

- 1. Go to your Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio.
- 2. Right-click on the database you want to backup. The database is likely called **EVENTPRODATA**, unless otherwise renamed by you.
- 3. From the right-click speed menu, select **Tasks > Backup**.

	Management Studio (Adminis	trator)			<u>_ 🗆 ×</u>
	ug Tools Window Help 🗿 🄔 New Query 🕞 📸 🖻	3 日本 19 - で - 月 - 马 (型)	>	*	- I
Object Explorer Connect - 랲 랲 =	▼ ₽ × ▼ 2 3 QLEXPRESS (SQL Server : Databases				
 € ven Security Server O Replicati Manager 	Tasks Policies Facets Start PowerShell	Detach Take Offline Bring Online Shrink	•		
	Reports Rename Delete Refresh Properties	Back Up Restore Generate Scripts Extract Data-tier Application Deploy Database to a Windows Azure VM	•		
Ready		Export Data-tier Application Register as Data-tier Application Upgrade Data-tier Application Delete Data-tier Application Import Data Export Data			

- 4. In the **Back Up Database** window, ensure that these settings have been selected:
 - a. Under the **General** page:
 - i. Backup type: Full
 - ii. Back up to: Disk

🛃 Micr				Quick Lougeh (Ctrl. O)	٥	_	x
File Edit	Back Up Database - EventPr	oData		-		×	
G - C	Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😮 Help					
€ ¥ .¥	 Media Options Backup Options 	Source				-	
Object Expl		Database:	EventProData		`	~	
Connect •		Recovery model:	SIMPLE				
😑 🔂 PSI		Backup type:	Full		`	~	
+		Copy-only backup					
•		Backup component:					
• •		Database					
 		Files and filegroups:				. 1	
		Destination					
+ = + <		Back up to:	Disk			-	
			Disk				
	Connection	C:\SQLExpress\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRE	SS\MSSQL\Backup\EventProData.bak		Add		
	Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS			[Remove		
	Connection: PSI\Sample				Contents	i I	
	y ₩ <u>View connection properties</u>			L		1	
	Progress						
	Ready						
	ad her						
_				ОК	Cancel		
🗇 Ready						.::	

iii. Since EventProData is the default name for all databases, you should ideally rename your backup database so that it is more easily identifiable for EventPro Support.

At the bottom of the window, click Add.

In the **Select Backup Destination** dialog, name the Destination with your **6-digit User ID**, or the name that your Support/Training Specialist has recommended.

	Micr				Ouick Launch (Ctrl+O)	٥		x
LX File	Edit	Back Up Database - Event	tProData		_		\times	~
G		Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help					
	* 6	General Media Options						
ŝ Ŧ	Y	Backup Options	Source					
Objec			Database:	EventProData			\sim	
	nect •		Recovery model:	SIMPLE				
	B PSI		Backup type:	Full			\sim	
L '	÷							
	+		tion		×			
	•		vice for the backup destination. You ca	n create backup devices for frequently used files.				
	e 💼							
	•							
	E 📕							
	4		L14.SQLEXPRESS\MSSQL\Backup\C	lient00000.BAK			\sim	
		Backup device:						
		Cc		\sim		Add		
		s				-		
						Remove	•	
		F				Content	s	
		4						
		Pr		OK Cancel				
		<u> </u>						
							_	
	-				ОК	Cano	cel .:	
🗖 Re	eady							đ

iv. You can then **Remove** the original name.

🛃 Micr	Back Up Database - EventPr			Owick Launch (Ctrl. O)		
File Edit		oData		-		
0.0	Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help				
8 # 59	Media Options					-
~ 1 1	🖋 Backup Options	Source				
Object Expl		Database:	EventProData		~	
Connect •		Recovery model:	SIMPLE			
🖃 🐻 PSI		Backup type:	Full		~	
= =			i di		-	
		Copy-only backup				
÷		Backup component:				
🖷		Database				
•		 Files and filegroups: 				
÷ =		 Tiles and negroups. 				
÷ 🗐		Destination				
÷ 4		Back up to:	Disk		~	
	Connection	C:\SQLExpress\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRES C:\SQLExpress\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRES	SS\MSSQL\Backup\EventProData.bak SS\MSSQL\Backup\Client000000.BAK		Add	
	Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS				Remove	
	Connection:					
	PSI\Sample				Contents	
	View connection properties					
	Progress					
	Ready					
	The second se					
				ОК	Cancel	
🗇 Ready						

- b. Under the **Backup Options** page:
 - i. Name: Also change this name to include your 6-digit User ID.
 - ii. Description: Enter a description, such as Backed up on DATE at TIME.

🛃 Micro			Quick Joursch (Ctrl) (0)	٥		
le Edit	Back Up Database - EventP	roData	-		\times	
	Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😮 Help				
	 General Media Options 					
¥ ¥	Backup Options	Backup set				
oject Expl			000000			
onnect •		Name:	00000			
🗟 🔂 PSI		Description:	000000 EventProData Full Backup 05/25/2019 at 11:41 AM			
= 🛋						
±		Backup set will expire:				
±.		After:	0 🗘 days			
÷ 💼		-	5/28/2019			
+ =		() On:	5/28/2019			
+ = + =		Compression				
•		Set backup compression:	Use the default server setting		\sim	
+ 4						
		Encryption				
	Connection	Encrypt backup				
	Server:	Algorithm:	AES 128		\sim	
	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS Connection:	Certificate or Asymmetric key:			24	
	PSI\Sample	Certificate of Asymmetric Key.			~	
	View connection properties	Encryption is available only when Back up to	o a new media set is selected in Media Options.			
	Progress					
	Ready					
			OK	Can	cel	
Ready				Cark		

- c. Click **OK**. It may take a few minutes to backup, depending on the size of your database.
- 5. Click **OK** again when the backup is complete.
- 6. Now, on your Database Server, you should have access to the **Backup** folder, which contains the backup file you just created.

On the backup file you created, right-click and select **Send To > Compressed (zipped) Folder** to create a zipped folder.

If not already done, remember to name that zipped folder as your 6-digit User ID number, or the name that your Support/Training Specialist has recommended.



2. Then, you will transfer the zip file to EventPro Support.

Send Data to Support

- 1. Your Support/Training Specialist may have provided you with a link for uploading your data.
- 2. If not, use your 6-digit **User ID** and 4-digit **Password** to log into to the **Client Login** area of the **EventPro** website.
 - a. You would have received an email from EventPro containing the User ID and Password. If you do not know your company's User ID and Password, please consult with the program administrator. If you have misplaced your User ID and Password, an authorized user can contact Support or Training to retrieve them.
 - b. Under the **Upload File** tab, click **Browse**. Select your data zip file and click **Open**.
 - c. Wait until the transfer is completed.
- 3. As soon as the transfer is complete, email <u>Support</u> to let them know that your data has been sent.
- 4. If this process does not work for you, please contact <u>Support</u> for further assistance.

If something in this process does not work for you, please contact <u>Support</u> for further assistance.

Review Cloud Requirements

• You can find the **technical requirements** for EventPro Software at:

https://www.eventpro.net/technical-requirements.html

- As noted in the technical requirements, **Citrix Workspace** allows you to easily and securely access your EventPro application.
 - NOTE: Citrix Workplace has replaced Citrix Receiver, the application previously used to access EventPro Cloud. Workspace has the same functionality as Receiver, but with more capabilities. Workspace is backward compatible with all Citrix solutions. If you already have Citrix Receiver installed, you can simply <u>Upgrade</u> <u>Receiver to Workspace</u>.
- There is also an option to run the "Light Version" of Citrix in a browser, although this does not allow access to local drives or local printers. This is explained in more detail under <u>Citrix Options</u>.

Citrix Options

- The **EventPro Cloud** application is accessed through **Citrix Workspace**, a software product that allows you to connect remotely to applications.
- To connect to EventPro Cloud, you can go through:
 - the Desktop Citrix Workspace Application

or

- the EventPro Cloud Gateway in an internet browser.
- To use the **desktop** Citrix Workspace, you must **install** Citrix Workspace on your machine.
- If accessing EventPro through the Cloud Gateway, you are still most likely going to install Citrix Workspace locally on your computer or device.
 - However, with the Cloud Gateway, you have a second option, which is to access EventPro using the "Light Version" of Citrix (also called "Citrix Receiver for HTML5").
 - The **Light Version** of Citrix allows you to access the EventPro Cloud application **within a web browser**, which means you do not need to install Citrix to your computer.
 - This is useful if you have trouble installing Citrix, or if your browser doesn't enable the correct extensions to use EventPro Cloud.
 - However, there are some limitations with the Light Version. It does not currently offer any access to your local drives (which means you will not be able to access local drives in order to import/export reports, contacts, *etc.*), and it does not offer printing to your local printers.
 - Therefore, Citrix recommends using the full-featured, installed **Citrix Workspace** if possible. If you want to be able to access your **local drives** and print to **local printers**, you need to install **Citrix** Workspace.
- We will first look at **installing Citrix Workspace**, assuming you want to use the full-featured version to access EventPro. Go to Install Citrix 13.
- Later, when accessing EventPro Cloud application from a browser, we will look at the option of using the Light <u>Version</u> of Cloud Application from a browser, we will look at the option of using the Light
- There is also a mobile Citrix Workspace app that allows you to access EventPro Cloud on your mobile device. See <u>EventPro Cloud on Mobile Device</u> 6.

Upgrade Receiver to Workspace

- **Citrix Receiver** is being replaced by the new **Citrix Workplace**. Citrix Workspace has the same functionality as Receiver, but with more capabilities, and is backward compatible with all Citrix solutions.
- The following topic is for clients who are **already running EventPro in Citrix Receiver**, and need to switch to the new Citrix Workspace for <u>Desktop</u> or/and <u>Mobile</u> 11. (If you are installing Citrix for the first time, you can begin at <u>Install Citrix</u> 13.)
- In many cases, you will not need to uninstall your existing Citrix Receiver before installing Citrix Workspace.
 However, Citrix has noted that some versions will need to be removed manually before you can install Citrix Workspace.
- To upgrade to Citrix Workspace for Desktop, go to https://www.citrix.co.in/downloads/workspace-app.
 Download and install the app for your operating system.
- 2. During installation, **Citrix Workspace** should automatically replace your existing **Citrix Receiver**.

You will notice that the Citrix desktop icon turns from black to blue, the color of the new Workplace app.

3. When you run Citrix Workspace for the first time, you will receive this dialog:



- a. The Learn More button will direct you to a website with more information about Citrix Workspace.
- b. Click **Got It** to go to the Citrix Workspace app.
- 4. Citrix Workplace should remember your Account and go directly to the login dialog.

However, if you need to add your Account again, review Run Citrix Workspace & Add Account 15.

5. When **Citrix Workspace** opens, you can log in as usual.

log Citrix Workspace					—	\times
Workspace			Log On	Q		
	Citrix Workspace			×		
	User name:	User_000000				
	Password:	•••••				
		Log On Cancel				
	0.6			-		
	Secure co	nnection				

6. Once logged in, your EventPro app should still be there, as before. If not, you can review how to <u>Add Apps to Citrix</u> <u>Workspace</u> 17. You can now run EventPro, and continue to work as usual.

Oitrix Workspace				-	×
Workspace		000000 ~	Q		
	0				
+	EventPro				

- 7. The process of upgrading to Citrix Workspace on your smartphone or tablet will vary, depending on your device, its operating system, and its settings.
 - a. Typically, you can update or install the **Citrix Workspace app** from the iTunes App Store (Apple iOS devices) or Google Play (Android devices), but if neither of those options are applicable to you, there are other versions available for download on the Citrix website.
 - b. If your device is set to **automatically install app updates**, Citrix Receiver may have already been upgraded automatically for you.
 - c. When you run Citrix Workspace on your mobile device for the first time, you may get a notification that Citrix Receiver has been upgraded to Citrix Workspace.



d. If your account and favorite apps have not been preserved during the upgrade, you can review how to <u>Add an</u> <u>Account</u> **57**, <u>Log In/Sign In</u> **57**, <u>Add Apps to Favorites</u> **58**, <u>Adjust Settings</u> **60**, and more under <u>EventPro</u> <u>Cloud on Mobile Device</u> **56**.

		Favorites	Edit
0	EventPro		
Favori		Apps	\$ Settings

Install Citrix

- The following instructions describe how to install Citrix Workspace on a **computer**.
- To learn how to install and use the Citrix Workspace mobile app on a smartphone or tablet, see <u>EventPro Cloud on</u> <u>Mobile Device</u> 56
- 1. Download the relevant version of Citrix Workspace from www.citrix.com/downloads/workspace-app.
- 2. Install Citrix Workspace, following the Citrix Workspace installation wizard.



3. When the installation is complete, you can just click **Finish**. We will learn how to add an Account later.

If you want to add an Account now, click **Add Account**. See <u>Run Citrix Workspace & Add Account</u> for further instructions.



4. When you are finished installing Citrix Workspace, you can decide whether you want to access EventPro Cloud application through the **desktop Citrix Workspace** or the **Cloud Gateway in a browser**.

- a. Access from Desktop Citrix Workspace 15
- b. Access from Cloud Gateway Browser 26

Access from Desktop Citrix Workspace

These instructions describe how to access EventPro Cloud through the **installed Citrix Workspace application on your computer**.

The first time you run Citrix Workspace after installing it, you need to take a few steps in order to set up access to EventPro. Subsequent logging in to EventPro will be much more simple.

- Run Citrix Workspace & Add Account 15
- Add Apps to Citrix Workspace 17
- Run EventPro 19
- <u>Subsequent EventPro Login</u> 2

Run Citrix Workspace & Add Account

- 1. Assuming it is already <u>installed</u> ¹³, run **Citrix Workspace** from your **Start** menu or desktop shortcut.
- 2. If you have not already added an account, the **Add Account** window will appear when you run Citrix Workspace for the **first time** after installation.

(NOTE: There is also a way to add an account to the Citrix Receiver through the Cloud Gateway, in which you activate Citrix Receiver for desktop. We will look at that option <u>below</u> 37.)

3. Enter cloud.eventpro.net in the field and click Add.

Citrix Workspace	\times
Add Account	
Enter your work email or server address provided by your IT department:	
cloud.eventpro.net	
Do not show this window automatically at logon.	
Add Close	

4. The next window asks for your login credentials.

a. If you are the **Admin User** logging in for the **first time**, your EventPro cloud application will have a **default Admin User** already created. Log in with these default credentials:

User Name: admin_X (where the X represents your company's 6-digit User ID number. So, for example, if your User ID is 123456, you would log in with the user name admin_123456).

Password: EventPro1234 (Once you are in EventPro, you will want to change this password - see <u>Change Your</u> <u>Password</u> 50.)

b. If you are a **regular, non-Admin User**, your Admin User should have provided you with your **User Name** (in the format namel_000000, where "name" is your first name, "I" is your last name initial, and 000000 represents your organization's 6-digit User ID) and your **Password**.

Enter those credentials now.

c. Click Log On.

Citrix Workspace	>
Add Ad	count
🎯 Citrix Workspace	×
User name:	UserA_000000
Password:	•••••
	Log On Cancel
Secure co	onnection
🗌 Do not sh	ow this window automatically at logon.
	Add Close

5. The Citrix Receiver window opens.



6. Next, go to Add Apps to Citrix Workspace 17.

Add Apps to Citrix Workspace

When you open and log into Citrix Workspace for the first time, there won't be any apps on the screen.
 You can add your EventPro app now.

Citrix Workspace		- 🗆 X
Workspace	000000 v Q	
+ Add your favorite apps		

- 2. Click the plus sign (+) along the left sign of the screen.
- 3. Select your **EventPro** application icon from the list. Depending on your region, it will be **EventPro**, **EventPro** AU or **EventPro** EU.

The **EventPro** icon will be added to the Citrix Workspace home screen.

4. Click anywhere on the page to close the apps menu and view your Citrix Workspace screen.

@ Citrix Workspace		-	- 🗆	×
Workspace	000000 ~	Q		
	5			
+ Ev	entPro			

5. Next, go to <u>Run EventPro</u> ¹⁹.

Run EventPro

1. Click the **EventPro** icon.

The loading spinner icon indicates that it is working, and you **do not** need to click the icon again.

2. The **EventPro Starting** dialog will appear. Continue to wait, and do not click the program icon again.

🞯 Citrix Workspace				_	\times
Workspace		000000 ~	Q		
	× 📀				
+					
	EventPro				
	🕝 EventPro –	- 🗆 X			
	Starting				
	• More information	Cancel			

3. The **EventPro Starting** dialog will disappear, and the **EventPro splash screen** will appear, indicating that EventPro is starting up.

The EventPro splash screen may open **behind** the Citrix window, so you may need to **move or minimize the Citrix window** to see EventPro starting up.

Do not click the program icon a second time once EventPro is already loading up; give the loading screen a few moments to appear.

Event Managemen	
Generating application UI structure	
Copyright © 2000-2018	Profit Systems inc

4. If there is more than one database to choose from, select the relevant database from the drop-down list and click **Log On**.

If you only have one available database, you won't have to perform this step.

5. The EventPro application will load for a few more seconds, and then appear in its own window separate from the Citrix Workspace window.

Citrix Works	space		- 🗆 X	
Works	Q ♥ View Tools	EventPro	- 0	>
	Navigation (C)	Panels		
+	Navigation Appearance Windows Navigation # × My Workplace Image: My Details Task List Task Calendar Venue Calendar	Actions		
	 ⓓ My Workplace ✔ Events			
	E Lodging			
	◯ Communications☑ Tasks			
	🗐 Finance			
	User: AliceK_001000 Client ID: PSI001000AK2 Memory Usage: 153MB	Version: 18.1.3		

Subsequent EventPro Login

After you have installed **Citrix Workspace** and completed the other setup described above, there will be fewer steps to logging into EventPro Cloud.

- 1. Run Citrix Workspace from your Start menu or desktop shortcut.
- 2. If the login dialog doesn't pop up right away, click the **Log On** link.
- 3. Enter your User Name and Password, and click Log On.

log Citrix Workspace		- 🗆 X
Workspace	L	Log On 🗸 🗌
+	Citrix Workspace User name: Password: Log On Cancel Secure connection	

4. In the Citrix Workspace window, click the EventPro icon.

The loading spinner icon indicates that it is working, and you **do not** need to click the icon again.

5. The **EventPro Starting** dialog will appear. Continue to wait, and do not click the program icon again.

Workspace 000000 V Q	
+	
EventPro	
Starting	
Wore information Cancel	

6. The **EventPro Starting** dialog will disappear, and the **EventPro splash screen** will appear, indicating that EventPro is starting up.

The EventPro splash screen may open behind the Citrix window, so you may need to move or minimize the Citrix window to see EventPro starting up.

Do not click the program icon a second time once EventPro is already loading up; give the loading screen a few moments to appear.

Event Managemen	Pro [®] of Software
Generating application UI structure	
Copyright © 2000-2018	Profit Systems ic

7. If there is more than one database to choose from, select the relevant database from the drop-down list and click **Log On**.



8. The EventPro application will appear in its own window separate from the Citrix Workspace window.

+

 \times

Worksp	Q =	EventPro	_
	View Tools	LVEIGIO	
	Image: Second		
	Navigation # × My Workplace * My Details Task List * Task Calendar *		
	A		
	My Workplace		
	✓ Events		
	E courseles		
	CRM/Sales		
	Tasks		
	Finance		
	 □ 및 1 ⊚ 1 ×		

Access from Cloud Gateway Browser

These instructions explain how to access EventPro Cloud through the EventPro Cloud Gateway in an internet browser.

The first time you access Citrix through the Cloud Gateway, you need to take a few steps in order to set up access to EventPro. Subsequent logging into EventPro will be much more simple.

- Login to Cloud Gateway 26
- <u>Run Citrix</u>²⁹
- Add Apps to Citrix StoreFront 35
- Activate Desktop Citrix 37
- <u>Run EventPro</u> 40
- <u>Subsequent EventPro Login</u> 4

Login to Cloud Gateway

1. In your internet browser, go to:

https://cloud.eventpro.net

Citrix Access Gateway x	
← → C f lahttps://cloud.eventpro.net/vpn/index.html	☆ =
Event Pro' Cloud Gateway	
Welcome Pease log on to continue. User name: Password: Description Log On	
€ √ent Pro ℃	

You can also access the **Cloud Login** link from the EventPro **My Account** page.

Established in 1985	ystemsinc	EventPro*		pert	000
🏠 Home	🔏 My Account 🛛 👗 Download	🜞 What's New	🍰 Uploa	nd File 😯 Mar	nual 🔀 My Preference
Downloads					
2	r cloud portal: Cloud Login				
uneed the Citrix Rece	piver: Click here				
u need the Citrix Rece view/Accept the	^{iver: Click here} EventPro Software Program Lice	ense Agreement a	and download	l your licensed app	lications.
view/Accept the	EventPro Software Program Lice	2			
view/Accept the	EventPro Software Program Lice	2			
view/Accept the ou must accept the bindi am authorized to accep	EventPro Software Program Lice	it Systems Inc with Client			
riew/Accept the ou must accept the bind am authorized to accep use download and re	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. I Software License Agreements on behalf of Profi eview the license agreement. Get Licen	it Systems Inc with Client			rogram License Agreement
view/Accept the ou must accept the bindi am authorized to accep	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. It Software License Agreements on behalf of Profi eview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name	it Systems Inc with Client ise Agreement Size	ID 000000 and I acc	ept the EventPro Software P Date	
riew/Accept the ou must accept the bind am authorized to accep ase download and re Click	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. t Software License Agreements on behalf of Profi eview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup, 16.2.3.21611.exe	it Systems Inc with Client ise Agreement Size	ID 000000 and I acco 101,999KB	pept the EventPro Software P Date 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM	rogram License Agreement Description *Required*
riew/Accept the ou must accept the bind am authorized to accep ase download and re Click Download file	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. t Software License Agreements on behalf of Profi eview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup. 16.2.3.21611.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup. 16.2.3.21610	it Systems Inc with Client ise Agreement Size D.exe	ID 000000 and I acc 101,999KB 106,534KB	Date 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM	rogram License Agreement Description *Required* EventPro Connect Setup
riew/Accept the ou must accept the bind am authorized to accept ase download and re Click Download file Download file Download file	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. t Software License Agreements on behalf of Profi aview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup. 16.2.3.21611.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup. 16.2.3.21610 EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.16.2.	it Systems Inc with Client ise Agreement Size D.exe 3.21612.exe	ID 000000 and I acc 101,999KB 106,534KB	Date 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM	rogram License Agreement Description *Required* EventPro Connect Setup EventPro VirtualAssistant 1
riew/Accept the ou must accept the bind am authorized to accept ase download and re Click Download file Download file Download file Download file	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. t Software License Agreements on behalf of Profi eview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup. 16.2.3.21611.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup. 16.2.3.21610	it Systems Inc with Client ise Agreement Size D.exe 3.21612.exe	ID 000000 and I acc 101,999KB 106,534KB 84,978KB 69,218KB	Date 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM	rogram License Agreement Description *Required* EventPro Connect Setup EventPro VirtualAssistant License Updater/Database
riew/Accept the ou must accept the bind am authorized to accept ase download and re Click Download file Download file Download file	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. t Software License Agreements on behalf of Profi aview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup. 16.2.3.21611.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup. 16.2.3.21610 EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.16.2.	it Systems Inc with Client ise Agreement Size D.exe 3.21612.exe	ID 000000 and I acc 101,999KB 106,534KB 84,978KB 69,218KB	Date 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM	rogram License Agreement Description *Required* EventPro Connect Setup EventPro VirtualAssistant
iew/Accept the u must accept the bind am authorized to accep se download and re Click Download file Download file Download file Download file	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. It software License Agreements on behalf of Profi aview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.16.2.3.21611.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.16.2. EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.16.2.	it Systems Inc with Client ise Agreement Size D.exe 3.21612.exe	ID 000000 and I acc 101,999KB 106,534KB 84,978KB 69,218KB	Date 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM	rogram License Agreement Description Required* EventPro Connect Setup EventPro VirtualAssistant License Updater/Databas
ew/Accept the must accept the bindi m authorized to accep e download and re lick ownload file ownload file ownload file	EventPro Software Program Lice ing License Agreement before downloading. It software License Agreements on behalf of Profi aview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.16.2.3.21611.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.16.2. EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.16.2.	it Systems Inc with Client ise Agreement Size D.exe 3.21612.exe	ID 000000 and I acc 101,999KB 106,534KB 84,978KB 69,218KB	Date 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 15-Jun-2017 08:06 AM 21-Jun-2017 10:44 AM	rogram License Agreement Description *Required* EventPro Connect Setup EventPro VirtualAssistant License Updater/Database

2. The EventPro Cloud Gateway asks for your login credentials.

Citrix Access Gateway X	
← → C f https://cloud.eventpro.net/vpn/index.html	☆ =
Event Pro* Cloud Gateway	
Welcome Plesse log on to continue. Image: Continue in the set of t	
E vent Pro	

a. If you are the **Admin User** logging in for the **first time**, your EventPro cloud application will have a **default Admin User** already created.

Log in with these default credentials:

- i. **User Name**: admin_X (where the X represents your company's 6-digit User ID number. So, for example, if your User ID is 123456, you would log in with the user name admin_123456).
- ii. **Password**: EventPro1234 (Once you are in EventPro, you will want to change this password see <u>Change</u> <u>Your Password</u> (50).)
- b. If you are a **regular, non-Admin User**, your Admin User should have provided you with your **User Name** (in the format namel_000000, where "name" is your first name, "I" is your last name initial, and 000000 represents your organization's 6-digit User ID) and your **Password**.

Enter those credentials now.

- 3. Click Log On.
- 4. Next, proceed to **Run Citrix** 2, where you will either use the **installed Citrix Workspace** application or the "Light Version" **Citrix Receiver for HTML5** through a web browser.

Run Citrix

1. When you **first login** to the EventPro Cloud Gateway, it will look for the installed **Citrix Workspace**. What it finds determines your options for proceeding.

NOTE: As mentioned earlier, **Citrix Receiver** has been upgraded to **Citrix Workspace**. This webpage currently refers to Citrix "Receiver", but it will detect and use **Citrix Workspace**, if applicable.

- 2. If you want to use the **full-featured**, **installed** version of **Citrix Workspace** (formerly Receiver), ensure that you have **already installed it**, following the instructions <u>above</u> 13.
 - Use Installed Citrix

3. If you already have <u>Citrix Workspace installed</u> 13, the browser should detect it after you login to **https://cloud.eventpro.net**, and you should go straight to the **Citrix StoreFront** home screen.

However, if your **browser history has been cleared** since the last time you logged into Citrix, you may need to **detect/allow/activate** it again. The process of detecting Citrix will differ slightly, depending on the browser you are using. We will look at the examples of **Firefox** and **Chrome**.

4. In **Firefox** and **Chrome**, you will probably end up at the **Welcome to Citrix Receiver** screen. (Again, note that **Citrix Receiver** is now **Citrix Workspace**, although this webpage still refers to the "Receiver".)



Click Detect Receiver.

In Chrome, you may receive an Open Citrix Workspace Launcher dialog. To continue, click the Open Citrix Workspace Launcher button.

		- 🗆 X
← → C ☆ (i) https://cloud.eventpro.net/C	itrix/StoreWeb/	☆ \varTheta :
	Open Citrix Workspace Launcher?	
	Always open these types of links in the associated app	
	Open Citrix Workspace Launcher	
citrix Receive	Just a moment, we're detecting if Citrix Receiver is already installed. If Citrix Receiver is detected, you will see a window in a few seconds. Please choose Launch Application . If no window appears, select from the options below. Use light version Already installed	

5. You will arrive at the Citrix StoreFront.



- 6. If you do not want to detect or install Citrix Workspace, you can use the **Light Version** within an internet browser. Also, if Citrix Workspace is installed, but fails for some reason, the EventPro Cloud application will use the Light Version.
 - Use Light Version (No Install)

1. The process of **bypassing installation** may be slightly different, depending on the Internet browser you are using. We will look at the examples of **Firefox** and **Chrome**.



2. Click the Use Light Version link below the Detect Receiver button.

3. You will go to the **Citrix Receiver StoreFront**.
| ✓ Citrix Receiver × ← → C ☆ ③ https://cloud.eventpro.net/Citrix/St | toreWeb/ | | | Θ | _ | □ | ×
]: |
|--|---------------------------------|------|-------------------|--------------|---------|--------|---------|
| Citrix StoreFront | FAVORITES | APPS | | | | 000000 | • |
| | | | | Q Search Fav | vorites | | |
| Go to Apps, click on De | Add Fav
tails next to your o | | elect Add to Favo | rites. | | | |

7. The **Citrix StoreFront** opens to the **Favorites** page.

If you haven't logged into Citrix before, the **Favorites** page will be blank.



8. You have the option to access EventPro from the **Apps** page. Click the **Apps** icon at the top of the webpage.

Oitrix Receiver	× +				- 🗆 ×	¢
$\overleftarrow{\leftarrow}$ \rightarrow $\overleftarrow{\leftarrow}$	🛈 🔒 https://cloud.eventpro.	net/Citrix/StoreWeb/	··· 🛡 1	✿ Search		Ξ
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	APPS		000000 🔻	
All Categories					Q Search All Apps	
All Apps EventPro	Details					

9. However, if you want the EventPro app to be readily accessible, you can add it to your Citrix StoreFront **Favorites** page.

See Add Apps to Citrix StoreFront 351.

Add Apps to Citrix StoreFront

1. When you log into the Citrix StoreFront for the first time, there won't be any apps on your Favorites page.

You can always access EventPro from the **Apps** page, but you may find it convenient to add EventPro and any other frequently used apps to your **Favorites** pages so that they appear first whenever you log into Citrix.

2. In the top navigation ribbon, click **Apps** to open the **All Apps** page.

Citrix Receiver	× +				- 🗆 ×
$\overleftarrow{\bullet}$ \rightarrow $\overleftarrow{\bullet}$	🛈 🔒 https://cloud.eventpro.ne	et/Citrix/StoreWeb/	🛡 🏠	Q Search	\ □ =
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	APPS		000000 🔻
All Categories				Q	Search All Apps
All Apps EventPro	Details				

3. Find the **EventPro** application icon and click the **Details** link to the right of the icon.

Depending on your region, your program icon will be called EventPro, EventPro AU or EventPro EU.

4. In the EventPro icon page, click Add to Favorites.

Oitrix Receiver	× +				- 🗆 ×
$\overleftarrow{\bullet}$ \rightarrow $\overleftarrow{\bullet}$	(i) 🔒 https://cloud.eventpro.net/0	Citrix/StoreWeb/	··· 💟 1	✿ Search	\ ⊡ ≡
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	APPS		000000 🔻
<					
Copen]			

5. View your **Favorites** page.

<u>File Edit View History Bo</u>	okmarks <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp × +				-		×
$\overleftarrow{\leftarrow}$ \rightarrow C $\overleftarrow{0}$	i 🔒 https://cloud.event	pro.net/Citrix/StoreWeb/	♥ ☆	Q Search	I	∥\ ⊡	≡
Citrix StoreFron	t		APPS			000000	•
					Q Search Favorites		
EventPro	Details						

6. If you need to, you can now <u>Activate Desktop Citrix</u> 37.

If you wish to skip that step, you can proceed to **Run EventPro** 40.

Activate Desktop Citrix

You may have already activated the Desktop Citrix Workspace and added an account; review Access from Desktop Citrix Workspace > $\frac{\text{Run Citrix Workspace & Add Account}}{15}$.

However, if you haven't, you can do so here from the Citrix StoreFront through the Cloud Gateway.

1. In the **Citrix Storefront**, open the drop-down menu under your username in the upper right corner, and select **Activate**.

You may notice that the hover hint text for this command says, "Activate Citrix Receiver on your desktop".

<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew Hi <u>s</u> tory <u>B</u> ookmarks	s <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp					-	- 🗆	×
	+							
\leftarrow \rightarrow C \textcircled{a}	https://cloud.eventpro.net/0	Citrix/StoreWeb/		♥ ☆	Q Search		\ ⊡	≡
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	APPS		\		000000 `	•
					A A	ctivate		
					[Activate Citrix Rece	eiver on your d	lesktop
6	Details				ŀ	bout		
EventPro					L	og Off		
https://cloud.eventpro.net/Citrix/StoreWeb	o/ServiceRecord/GetDocument/receiv	erconfig.cr?CsrfToken=40	5888C4465EB2EFCBC	C7A63A81F5/	AAA&IsUsingHttps=Yes			

You will be prompted to Open or Save the receiverconfig.cr file, and click OK.
 (Note that although the dialog still refers to "receiver", it will use the new Citrix Workspace application.)
 If you Save the file, go to the folder where you saved it and double-click to run it.

Citrix Receiver	× +							-	- 🗆	×
(←) → C' @	🛈 🔒 https://cloud	l.eventpro.net/Citr	ix/StoreWeb/		··· 🛡	☆	Q Search		\ ⊡	≡
Citrix StoreFront			FAVORITES	APPS					000000	•
								Q Search Favorit	ES	
		Opening receiverc	onfig.cr			×				
EventPro	Details	from: https What should Fin Ogpen with Save File	nfig.cr document (342 bytes) :://cloud.eventpro.net efox do with this file?		Cance					

3. The prompt from Citrix asks if you want to add "Store Service" provided by "*.eventpro.net".

If you want to proceed, click Add.

Citrix Receiver	× +					- 🗆 ×
$\left(\leftarrow ightarrow$ C \bigtriangleup	🛈 🔒 https://clo	ud.eventpro.net/Citri	ix/StoreWeb/	🚥 🔽 🟠 🔍 Search		<u>↓</u> III\ 🗊 🗏
Citrix StoreFront			FAVORITES	BB APPS		000000 🔻
					(Q Search Favorites
EventPro	Details	You sh	you want to a vided by "*.ev	K dd "Store Service" entpro.net"? trust *.eventpro.net was		

4. In the next dialog, enter your User Name and Password, and click Log On.

Citrix Receiver	× +					- 🗆	×
← → ♂ ଢ	🛈 🔒 https://cloud	l.eventpro.net/Citri	x/StoreWeb/	🔽 🏠 🔍 Sea	arch 🚽	\ ⊡	≡
Citrix StoreFront			FAVORITES	APPS		000000	•
					Q Search Favorit	es	
EventPro	Details	Citrix Workspa User name Password:	:: user_000000	ancel			

5. The **desktop Citrix Workspace** will appear in a separate window, containing the **"Favorite**" app you selected in the Citrix Storefront.

Oitrix Receiver	× +		– 🗆 ×
$\overleftarrow{\leftarrow}$ \rightarrow $\overleftarrow{\circ}$	(i) 🔒 https://doud.eventpro.net/Citrix/StoreWeb/	••• 🛡 🏠 🔍 Search	<u>↓</u> III\ 🗊 😑
Citative Stand Frankt		₽₽	
Citrix StoreFront	🞯 Citrix Workspace		- 🗆 X
	Workspace	000000 v Q	
\mathbf{O}	Details		
EventPro			
		6	
	+		
		EventPro	

6. If you select **Accounts** under the Username menu, you will see that the Store Service account has been added to the desktop Citrix Workspace, so you won't be prompted to add an account when you subsequently run it.



Run EventPro

1. In the **Citrix StoreFront** page, click the **EventPro** icon.

The loading spinner icon indicates that it is working, and you **do not** need to click the icon again.

<u>File Edit View History Bookm</u>	_					– o ×
← → ⊂ ŵ	i Ahttps://cloud.eventpro.net/Citr	ix/StoreWeb/		♥ ☆	Q Search	\ ⊡ ≡
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	BB APPS			000000 🔻
					C	ζ Search Favorites
EventPro	Details					
https://cloud.eventpro.net/Citrix/StoreV	Neb/#					

2. The EventPro Starting dialog should appear. Continue to wait, and do not click the EventPro icon again.

Citrix Receiver	× +				- 🗆 ×
$\overleftarrow{\leftarrow}$ \rightarrow C $\widehat{\mathbf{u}}$	🛈 🔒 https://cloud.ev	entpro.net/Citrix/StoreWeb/	··· 🛡 🏠 🔍	Search	<u>↓</u> III\ ① =
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	APPS		000000 🔻
				(Q Search Favorites
EventPro	S	• EventPro	- X Cancel		

3. The **EventPro Starting** dialog will disappear, and the **EventPro splash screen** will appear, indicating that EventPro is starting up.

It may take a few moments for the EventPro splash screen to appear, and it may open **behind** the Citrix window, so you may need to **move or minimize the Citrix window** to see EventPro starting up. Do not click the program icon a second time once EventPro is already loading up; give the loading screen a few moments to appear.



4. If there is more than one database to choose from, select the relevant database from the drop-down list and click **Log On**.

If you only have one database, you will not have to perform this step.



5. The EventPro application will load for a few more moments, and then appear.

a. If you are using the installed **Citrix Workspace**, the EventPro application will appear in its own window that is **separate from the browser** in which you launched Citrix StoreFront.



b. If you are using the "Light Version" of **Citrix Receiver** (*i.e.* bypassing Citrix installation), the EventPro application will open in a new tab **within the same browser**.

You can move the EventPro window around and even open multiple EventPro windows within the browser window's confines.

Citrix Receiver X	© EventPro × +			
)→ C' û	() A https://cloud.eventpro.net/Citrix/StoreWeb	/clients/HTML5Client/src/SessionWindow.ht	tmli 🚥 🔽 🏠 🔍 Search	III\ 🗊
C O O T	Events - EventPro		a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a	
Multi-Edit Spit Multi-Edit Spit Event Setup Spit Event Edit Spit Cose	Merge 👔 Change Status 🔻 🚼 Create Payment 🛐	Open Object View Open Object View Open Object Reports	Full Text Search ▼	
Vavigation 4 ×	✓ Events ×			
My Workplace	S From Date 10 Client Co		Cont Venue Calendar - Venue Calenda	ik.
Hy Details P Task List Task Calendar	▶ Tem. 400 Thu Jan	Close Event View TimeLine b	y Location	Print Previous Dates Records Navigatis
🕎 My Workplace	Ten 395 Fri Mar 3 Fri Mar 3 Page Pharmac Co Ten 393 Mon Mar Mon Mar *EP Venue Gr		January	Reports Records Navigatio
📌 Events	Ten 392 Sat Mar Sat Mar Zalia Travel A Kir Ten 391 Fri Mar 2 Fri Mar 2 Door Football Mo	o muri	9 Tue 10 Wed 11 Thu 12 Fri	13 Sat 14 Sun Select All
🔄 Lodging	Ten 390 Thu Mar Thu Mar Glory Entertai Kh			Venue
CRM/Sales	Ten 389 Wed Ma Wed Ma Channel Factory Ril Ten 388 Tue Mar Tue Mar Success Outre Hu Ten 387 Mon Mar Mon Mar Audore Audore Je Ten 385 Sat Jun Success Outre Hu Ten 385 Sat Jun Such and the starts outre Heat Arts Code Fit	3:30PM- 00AM Ballroom A 232-903 Supress	aspectation and a second secon	00PM 30PM Location Select s 400-Busines 365-Pixomb s o Company
Tasks	Ten 384 Tue Jun Wed Jun Suror Business Gr		Conference Conference & Expo	Conference Banquet Enter text to AExpo
 Privance Reports Mail Merge 	Ten 383 Mon Jum Tue Jun Charity Giving Me Ten 382 Fri Jun 0 Fri Jun 0 Tricket Works My Ten 381 Wed Se Wed Se Morph Industries Di Ten 380 Thu May Thu May Legacy Shows Tr	3:30PM- 00AM 232-Busine Ballroom A/B s Dinner	12: 3:00PM-10: 3:30PM-22: 6:00AM-11: 6:00AM-11: 30PM 00AM 00PM 00PM 233-Event 234-Compa 400-Busines 400-Busines anquet ny Event s s	L: 6:00AM-11: 3:30PM-11: 00PM 30PM s: 400-Busines 365-Pixomb s o Company e Conference Banquet
it 💿 📰 🚧 🐥 -	369		3:30PM-11: 30PM	&Expo
lient ID: PSI001000AK2 Memory Usage	e: 155MB Total Users: 1 Total Concurrent: 0 User: AliceK_0010	Ballroom B	3:00PM-10: 3:30PM-11: 6:00AM-11: 6:00AM-11: 30PM 00PM 00PM	: 6:00AM-11: DOPM

Click the menu icon at the top center of the browser window to access options for **Full Screen**, **Clipboard**, and more.

Citrix Receiver	Bookmarks To	ventPro	× +												- 0
) → ሮ û			ud.eventpro.net/Citrix/	Stora/Web/clients	/HTML5Clior	at lere l	onWin	ndow.htm	al? •••	· ♥ ☆	Q Sear	ch			lii\ 🗊
		netps,//cio	daleven promety entry	storewebyenents	THRESCHEI					• •					
						<u>©</u>	53		()		_				
<u>C 0 0</u>	T		Events - Ev	ventPro		~	-				1				
Home View	Tools								Abo	out ^					
Multi-Edit	Split 🔻	Save to Tem		_		80		Ê.	Log	Off					
Close Event Setup	Svent Merge	Change State	~ .	Open Ob	ject View	G Filt	ters i	Reports	Swit	tch apps					
📝 Event Edit	Copy Template	e 🐁 Set Lock Lev	vel 🔻 🖂 Send Email	×	•	0	•		Search						
Close		Edit				Re		Reports							
lavigation	ах 🤌	Events 🗙													
My Workplace	S	Jate	Date To Client	Client Contact	Event Name	Acc Mar	count na	Event Ma	Cost Center	Con	Calendar -	Venue Calenda			
🔏 My Details		en 400 Thu Ja	an Sat Jan Biozio Inc	. Fisher, Ci	Business Con			RJV		Co					
🏹 Task List	Т	en 399 Thu De	ec Thu Dec Calculate	Prof Murphy,	Executive Me	eting EPI	I	RJV		Nc			~	4	
	Т	en 398 Wed D	De Wed De Calculate	Prof Murphy,	Employee Bar	nquet EPI	I	RJV		Co	N (1/8/	2018 • Sele
Task Calendar		en 397 Tue De	ec Tue Dec Alliance P	harm Poulin, To	. Meet and Gre			RJV		C	oom In Zoo	n Out Refresh	Print	Previous Dates	
			ec Mon Dec Alliance P			-		RJV		Co			Reports	Dutes	Records Naviga
			r 3 Fri Mar 3 Page Pha					RJV	INT	Co					
👩 My Workplace			Iar Mon Mar *EP Venu ar Sat Mar Zalia Trav		. Staff Training			RJV RJV	11/1		Janua				Control Pan
📌 Events			r 2 Fri Mar 2 Door Foo			HR		RJV	AU	Co	11 Th	u 12 Fri	13 Sat	14 Sun	Select A
Lodging			ar Thu Mar Glory Ent			ence EPI	I	RJV	AU						Venue
	Т	'en 389 Wed №	1a Wed Ma Channel F	actory Riley, Brit	Safety Semin	ar HR.	J	RJV		Co					*EP Venue
CRM/Sales	Т	en 388 Tue Ma	ar Tue Mar Success (Outre Hussain,	Employee Bar	nquet HR.	J	RJV			2: 6:00AM 00PM	11: 6:00AM-11 00PM	6:00AM-11 00PM	: 3:30PM-11: 30PM	Location Sel
Communications	Т	en 387 Mon M	lar Mon Mar Audore A	udio Jenkins, J	. A/V Seminar	HR.	J	RJV		De	ba 400-Bus			s 365-Pixomb	Location Dei
💐 Tasks		en 385 Sat Ju	n Sun Jun Nest Arts	Coal Fisher, Je	. Summer Fair	EPI		RJV		De	Confere			o Company Banquet	Enter text
Finance			in Wed Jun Suror Bus					RJV		No	& Expo	& Expo	& Expo		▶ Level
			un Tue Jun Charity G					RJV RJV	US	De	2: 6:00AM 00PM		6:00AM-11		► V Level
Reports			e Fri Jun 0 Ticket Wo Wed Se Morph Inc		Company Bar			RJV			ba 400-Bus			s 365-Pixomb	🔸 🗹 Level 🤅
📳 Mail Merge			ay Thu May Legacy Si					RJV		De	Confere			o Company Banquet	
↓ [†] 💿 ¥il 🖄		369								De *	1: & Expo	& Expo	& Expo		
Same TD, DCT00 1000 M/2	155M	D. Tabel Hannes 1	Tabl Caracinath 0 Ularu	New 001000		_	_		_						
IEnt 10: PS1001000AK2 M	iemory usage: 155M	ib Total Users: 1	Total Concurrent: 0 User:	AliceK_001000					30PM	I SUPM	1: 6:00AM	11: 6:00AM-11 00PM	6:00AM-11 00PM		
	-								JULIT	JUNI	OUCH	UNIT	VUPPL	¥	

Subsequent EventPro Login

After you have completed the setup described above, there will be fewer steps to logging in to EventPro Cloud.

- 1. Go to **cloud.eventpro.net**, or access the **Cloud Login** link from **myaccount.eventpro.net** under the **Downloads** tab.
- 2. Enter your **User Name** and **Password**, and click **Log On**.

Citrix Access Gateway ×		
← → C ☆ At https://cloud.eventpro.net/vpn/i	index.html	☆ Ξ
Event Pro' Cloud Gateway		
	Welcome Please log on to continue. User name: Password: Log On	
	Event Pro	

3. If you have **Citrix Workspace installed**, the browser should remember it, but if your browser history has since been cleared, you may need to click **Detect Receiver** again.

If you do not want to install Citrix Workspace, remember that you click the Use Light Version link instead.



4. Once you are in the **Citrix StoreFront**, click your **EventPro** app icon. The loading spinner icon indicates that it is working, and you **do not** need to click the icon again.

Eile Edit View History Bookm Image: Citrix Receiver >						- 0	×
$\overleftarrow{\leftarrow}$ \rightarrow C' $\overleftarrow{\omega}$	🛈 🔒 https://cloud.eventpro.net/Citr	ix/StoreWeb/		🖸 🕁	Q Search	III\ 🖽	≡
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	BB APPS			000000	•
					Q	Search Favorites	
EventPro	Details						
https://cloud.eventpro.net/Citrix/Store	Web/#						

5. The EventPro Starting dialog should appear. Continue to wait, and do not click the program icon again.

Citrix Receiver	× +			- 🗆 ×
$\overleftarrow{\bullet}$ \rightarrow $\overleftarrow{\bullet}$	i 🔒 https://cloud.eventpro.	net/Citrix/StoreWeb/	💟 🏠 🔍 Searc	:h 👱 III\ 🗊 ≡
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	BB APPS	000000 🔻
				Q Search Favorites
EventPro	Details () Event Startin () More		- X Cancel	

6. If there is more than one database, select the correct database from the drop-down list, and click **Log On**. If you only have one database, you won't need to select one.

Citrix Receiver	× +			-	- 🗆 ×
$(\leftarrow) \rightarrow $ C (\triangle)	i 🔒 https://cloud.eventr	ro.net/Citrix/StoreWeb/	🔽 🏠 🔍 Sea	arch 💆	\ □ =
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	BB APPS		000000 🔻
				Q Search Favorite	5
EventPro	Details	n Please select your database. Database:	X Log On Cancel		

- 7. The EventPro application opens.
 - a. If using the **installed Citrix Workspace**, the EventPro application will appear in its own window that is **separate from the browser** in which Citrix StoreFront was launched.



b. If using the **Light Version** of Citrix, the EventPro application will open in a new tab **within the same browser**. You can move the EventPro window around and even open multiple EventPro windows within the browser window's confines.

Citrix Receiver X				j
)→ C û	(i) 🔒 https://doud.eventpro.net/Citrix/StoreWeb	b/clients/HTML5Client/src/SessionWindow.htm	••• 🛡 🏠 🔍 Search	lii\ 🗊
C 0 C =	Events - EventPro		- - x	
☑ Multi-Edit Image: Split ☑ Fuent Setup Image: Split ☑ Event Setup Image: Split ☑ Event Edit Image: Copy Te Close Image: Split	ferge 👔 Change Status 🔻 🏀 Create Payment 🛐	Open Object View O Re Filters Reports	Full Text Search ▼	
Navigation 🕴 🗙	🛃 Events 🗙		-	
My Workplace	S Date From Date To Client Cl 		Venue Calendar - Venue Calenda	IF.
Task List	Ten 399 Thu Dec Thu Dec Calculate Prof M Ten 398 Wed De Wed De Calculate Prof M Ten 397 Tue Dec Tue Dec Alliance Pharm Pc Ten 396 Mon Dec Mon Dec Alliance Pharm Pc	Close Objects Crastion	ocation Views Views Views Views	Print Previous 1/8/2018 • Select 1 Dates Records Navigation
🙆 My Workplace	Ten 395 Fri Mar 3 Fri Mar 3 Page Pharmac Co Ten 393 Mon Mar Mon Mar **EP Venue Gr	r	January	Control Panel
📌 Events	Ten 392 Sat Mar Sat Mar Zalia Travel A Kii Ten 391 Fri Mar 2 Fri Mar 2 Door Football Mi	o Mon	9 Tue 10 Wed 11 Thu 12 Fri	13 Sat 14 Sun Select All
Lodging	Ten 390 Thu Mar Thu Mar Glory Entertai Kh			Venue
CRM/Sales Communications	Ten 389 Wed Ma Wed Ma Channel Factory Ri Ten 388 Tue Mar Tue Mar Success Outre Hi Ten 387 Mon Mar Mon Mar Adore Audor Je Ten 385 Sat Jun Sun Jun Net Arts Coal Fit	e Ballroom A 232-Busines	30PM 00AM 00PM 00PM 233-Event 234-Compa 400-Busines 400-Busines Banquet ny Event s s Conference Conference Conference	e Conference Banquet Location Select
Finance	Ten 384 Tue Jun Wed Jun Suror Business Gr Ten 383 Mon Jun Tue Jun Charity Giving Mi			& Expo
📕 Reports	Ten 382 Fri Jun 0 Fri Jun 0 Ticket Works M Ten 381 Wed Se Wed Se Morph Industries Di Ten 380 Thu May Thu May Legacy Shows Tr	00AM 232-Busines Ballroom A/B s Dinner	30PM 00AM 00PM 00PM 233-Event 234-Compa 400-Busines 400-Busines Banquet ny Event s conference	00PM 30PM → M Level 2 s 400-Busines 365-Pixomb → M Level 3 s o Company e Conference Banquet
it 💿 🔢 🚧 🤹 -	369		3:30PM-11: 30PM	& Expo
Client ID: PSI001000AK2 Memory Usage:	: 155MB Total Users: 1 Total Concurrent: 0 User: AliceK_0010	Ballroom B	3:00PM-10: 3:30PM-11: 6:00AM-11: 6:00AM-11 30PM 00PM 00PM 00PM	: 6:00AM-11: DOPM

Click the menu icon at the top center of the browser window to access options for **Full Screen**, **Clipboard**, **Log Off**, and more.

Citrix Receiver	× ©	ventPro		×	+														
)→ C û			ttps://doud.		et/Citrix/StoreV	Nob/clients/k	TMI 5Clior	ot/src/9	lonW	indow.htr		··· 🔽 ሲ		Q. Search				lii\ 🗉	T I
			rtps://cioud.e	ventpro.ne	Citil A Store	veb/clients/i	THVIESCIE	ity sice						- Search					-
								6)		_						
<u> </u>				Ev	vents - EventPro	D		~											
	Tools									~	Ab	out							
XIII	Split 🔻		ave to Template		ate Invoice 🛛 📔 ate Payment 🛛 🕅			89 0			Lo	g Off							
Close	🍓 Event Merge 🛐 Copy Templat	-	Change Status			Open Obje	ct View	0	Filters	Reports	Sw	vitch apps							
Close			dit	• 🔄 361k			Ť	Re	Ť	Reports	searc	n •							
lavigation	а х 🤳	Events																	
My Workplace			Date		at 1	Client			Account	Event	Cost								
			From	Date To	Client	Contact	Event Name		Mana	Ma	Center	Co	Ca	alendar - Ver	ue Calenda	r			
🔏 My Details			400 Thu Jan			Fisher, Ci			HRJ	RJV		<u> </u>							
👌 Task List					Calculate Prof			-	EPI EPI	RJV RJV		Co	•			Ê	<		
Task Calendar					Alliance Pharm				HRJ	RJV				i In Zoom Ou	ut Defrech	Print	1/8/ Previous	2018 • S	Sele
					Alliance Pharm				HRJ	RJV		Co		20011-00	it Kellesii	FILL	Dates		
					Page Pharmac				EPI	RJV						Reports		Records Nav	viga
🕎 My Workplace		Ten	393 Mon Mar	Mon Mar	*EP Venue	Griffon, Al	Staff Training	9	HRJ	RJV	INT	Co		January				Control P	Pan
		Ten	392 Sat Mar	Sat Mar	Zalia Travel A	King, Rob	Travel Confe	rence	EPI	RJV				11 Thu	12 Fri	13 Sat	14 Sun	Selec	
📌 Events		fen :	391 Fri Mar 2	Fri Mar 2	Door Football	McDonald	Team AGM		HRJ	RJV	AU	Co						Venue	
📰 Lodging		Ten	390 Thu Mar	Thu Mar	Glory Entertai	Khan, Cec	Hiring Confer	rence	EPI	RJV	AU	Co							
CRM/Sales					Channel Factory				HRJ	RJV				6:00AM-11:	6:00AM-11:	6:00AM-11	: 3:30PM-11:	*EP Venu	Jue
					Success Outre			nquet	HRJ	RJV			2:	00PM	00PM	00PM	30PM	Location :	Se
Communications					Audore Audio Nest Arts Coal				HRJ EPI	RJV RJV		De	Da	400-Busines s	400-Busines s	s 400-Busine	o Company		
🖄 Tasks					Suror Business			onfer.	EPI	RJV		De		Conference & Expo	Conference & Expo	Conference & Expo	e Banquet	Enter to	text
Finance					Charity Giving				HRJ	RJV	US	N						▶ 🗌 Lev	vel
Reports			382 Fri Jun 0			Myers, Pe			HRJ	RJV		De	2:	6:00AM-11: 00PM	6:00AM-11: 00PM	6:00AM-11 00PM	L: 3:30PM-11: 30PM	→ 🗹 Lev	
	1				Morph Industries				EPI	RJV		De	Ja	400-Busines	400-Busines	400-Busine	o Company	🕨 🕨 Lev	vel
🦺 Mail Merge	1	Ten	380 Thu May	Thu May	Legacy Shows	Tran, Jos	Bridal Trade	Show	EPI	RJV		-		Conference & Expo	Conference & Expo	Conference & Expo			
↓ [†] 🍥 ¥il 🚧	ð -	3	169									De	1:	acxpo	acxpo	acxpo	•		
lient ID: PSI001000AK2 Mer	nory Usage: 155M	1B Total	Users: 1 Tota	l Concurrent:	0 User: AliceK_0	001000													
											SUPM	JUPM		6:00AM-11: 00PM	6:00AM-11: 00PM	6:00AM-11 00PM			

Change Your Password

Once you have logged into the EventPro Cloud application for the first time, the first thing you should do is **CHANGE YOUR PASSWORD!** Especially if you are the Admin User!

Please do not leave the password as the default, as all default admin users created for the cloud have the same default password, making it very easy for unscrupulous types to guess what your default admin password would be.

- 1. In EventPro, click My Details under My Workplace in the Navigation menu or left-hand Navigation panel.
- 2. The Security User edit form opens.
- 3. In the ribbon above, click the Change My Password button.
- 4. In the **Change Password** dialog, enter the **Old Password**, and type the new password in the **New Password** and **Confirm Password** fields. Click **OK**.

0 ≞ ≅ @ @) 😋 📕 🖺 🤈 🔹 Admin - Security User - Event9ro — 🗆 🗙
Home View	N Tools
	Image: Save and New Save and Cancel Clone Image: Spelling Image
Records Creation	Save Edit Record Edit Open Related Record View Records Navigation Close
My Workplace <	
hy Details	buser Options Regional Settings Messages EPConnect Settings
🚯 Task List	User Type: Concurrent Auto Expand Navigation
📷 Task Calendar	Account:* C Change Password
	User Name:* Admin User Code:* Admin To change your password, please enter your old and new passwords in the text fields
A A .	Change Password On First Logon
☆ My Workplace	
📌 Events	Font Color: Bla Back Color: Ug Old Password: Number of the second
🖾 Lodging	ApiKey: Non Modal Popup *
CRM/Sales	New Password: Default Confirm Password: 8:00 AM
Communications	9:00 AM
🖻 Tasks	🥪 Security Roles 👹 User Groups 🖂 E
Finance	
Reports	Name A
Mail Merge	Administrator
↓ [†] Import/Export	OK Cancel
 Dashboards 	
Udshbodi ds	
Σ. 🖄 •••	

Review the requirements for a cloud password under <u>Cloud Password Policy</u> 50¹.

5. If you want to change any other information in your Security User account, review the instructions under **Security Setup > Users** in the **EventPro User Manual**.

Cloud Password Policy

When setting your password for the EventPro Cloud login, please note that your password must meet certain minimum requirements for security reasons.

- The password **must not** contain your User Name
- The password must contain characters from at least 3 of these 5 categories:
 - o Uppercase characters
 - o Lowercase characters

- Digits 0 through 9 (Base 10 digits)
- o Non-alphanumeric characters ~ ! @ # \$ % ^ & * _ + = ` | \ () { } [] : ; " ' < > , . ? /
- Unicode character that is categorized as alphabetic but is not uppercase or lowercase, including Unicode characters from Asian languages
- Minimum Password Length: 7 characters
- **Password History Remembered**: 24 passwords, meaning that you cannot reuse a password that you used in the last 24 times you changed your password.
- **Minimum Password Age**: 1 day, meaning you cannot change your password more than once a day, which prevents users from repeatedly changing passwords in a short period of time to get back to an old password.

Exit EventPro Cloud

The method of exiting the EventPro Cloud application will differ, depending on whether you are using the installed **Citrix Workspace** or the **Light Version**.

- Installed Citrix Workspace:
 - When using the installed Citrix Workspace, whether accessing EventPro from the desktop Citrix Workspace or the Cloud Gateway in a browser, the EventPro application opens in its own window.
 - To close EventPro, click the **X** in the upper right corner of the main EventPro application window.

The dialog will confirm that you want to exit the application. Click Yes to close EventPro.

<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew Hi <u>s</u> tory <u>B</u> ookmarks <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp	- 🗆 ×
(←) → C ⁱ	t/Citrix/StoreWeb/ ···· 🛡 🏠 🔍 Search 🔟 🗉
Citrix Stor 🤄 🖣	EventPro — 🗆 🗙
View Tools	
	Window Panels
Navigation (1 1	List * *
Navigation Appearance	Windows Actions
Navigation 4 ×	
EventPro My Workplace	
▲ My Details ▶ Task List	
Task Calendar	Confirmation
Venue Calendar	Are you sure you want to exit the application?
My Workplace	Yes No
Events	
Lodging	
CRM/Sales	
Tasks	
📃 🖺 🛃 🗗 🔘 🗸	
User: AliceK_001000 Client ID: PSI001000AK2 Memor	y Usage: 149MB Version: 18.1.3

log Citrix Workspace	– 🗆 X
Workspace	AliceK_001000 v Q
📌 Events	
User: AliceK_001000 Client ID: PSI00	000AK2 Memory Usage: 153MB Version: 18.1.3 .:

• If you want, you can then **log out of Citrix Workspace**, and exit the Citrix Workspace application window or the internet browser, depending on how you accessed EventPro.

<u>File Edit View History Bookmark</u>	ks <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp			>	×
Citrix Receiver	× +				
\leftarrow \rightarrow C \textcircled{a}	i 🔒 https://cloud.eventpro.net	/Citrix/StoreWeb/	🖸 🏠 🔍 s	Search 💷	≡
Citrix StoreFront		FAVORITES	BB Apps	000000 🗸	
				Activate	
EventPro	Details			Change Citrix Receiver About Log Off	
https://cloud.eventpro.net/Citrix/Store	eWeb/ServiceRecord/GetDocument/recei	iverconfig.cr?CsrfToken=2613	9817D93BA25AC71B546A19D050A8&IsU	JsingHttps=Yes	



Citrix Workspace may still be running in the background. If you need to completely exit Citrix Workspace, you can
do so by right-clicking the icon in your Task Bar, and selecting Exit.



- Light Version of Citrix (Not Installed):
 - With the Light Version HTML5 Receiver, the EventPro application window stays confined within the browser window.
 - To close EventPro in the HTML5 Receiver, you need to click the X in the upper right corner of the main EventPro **application** window **not** the browser window or tab.

Citrix Receiver	< @	EventPro		× +					
) → C' @	(i) 🔒	https://clo	ud.eventpr	o.net/Citrix/StoreWe	b/clients/HTML50	🖸 🏠 🔍 Search		lil\	⊡ ≡
									_
					\bigcirc				
<u>• 0 0 C & V 0</u>	500	6 🐻 🖸	题 🥡 -	👫 🛪 📋 🔻 Eve	ents - EventPro				1 × 🖊
C Home View	Tools								
Navigation # ×	- 🛃 E	ivents 🗙							~
Events	St	atus	Book #	Date From 🔻	Date To	Client	Event Name		^
Events	Co	ompleted	4	Tue Feb 21 2017	Tue Feb 21 2017	Animated Productions	Lizzy Lizard Live Family Show	^	
Recently Accessed Events	Co	ompleted	2	Fri Feb 17 2017	Fri Feb 17 2017	Circle of Help Foundation	Fundraising Banquet		Co Ni
30 Find Event	Co	ompleted	1	Sat Feb 11 2017	Sat Feb 11 2017	Addition Corp.	Employee Banquet		Co
ind Space	Co	onfirmed	264	Thu Jan 26 2017	Thu Jan 26 2017	Talk Manufacturing	Business Banquet		0
💰 Create Event	Te	ntative	266	Mon Jan 23 2017	Mon Jan 23 2017	Chance Taker Initiative	Conference & Expo		Co
Event List	Co	ompleted	236	Tue Jan 17 2017	Tue Jan 17 2017	Emerald Management	Corporate Sessions		
	Co	onfirmed	265	Thu Jan 12 2017	Thu Jan 12 2017	Posh Shop	Corporate Banquet		Co
Tenue Calendar	Co	onfirmed	280	Mon Jan 09 2017	Wed Jan 11 2017	Biozio Inc.	Business Conference & Expo		
📝 Event Calendar	Co	onfirmed	263	Mon Jan 02 2017	Mon Jan 02 2017	Conive Ltd.	Corporate Banquet		Co
	Co	ompleted	113	Mon Dec 19 2016	Mon Dec 19 2016	Yarncen College	College Banquet		Co
	Co	ompleted	116	Sat Dec 17 2016	Mon Dec 19 2016	Notary Professionals Association	Professional Seminar	_	
	Co	ompleted	115	Fri Dec 16 2016	Sun Dec 18 2016	Cedore Professional Association	Training Seminar		
	Co	onfirmed	114	Fri Dec 16 2016	Fri Dec 16 2016	Morph Industries	Industry Trade Show		- De
🏠 My Workplace	1 T.	ntative	242	Tue Nov 29 2016	Tue Nov 29 2016	Magma Law LLC	Legal Presentations		De

• You should see the EventPro dialog asking "Are you sure you want to exit the application?". Click Yes.

The EventPro application will close, leaving the browser tab open and blank for a few moments, after which the tab will automatically close, and you will return to the Citrix StoreFront.

Child Development	×	EventPro		× +							
Citrix Receiver	~	C EventPro		× <u></u>							
) → 健 🏠	(i)	https://d	oud.eventpr	o.net/Citrix/StoreWeb	/clients/HTML50	5	Ӯ 🏠 🔍 Search		liP		ו
	aa 🗖		1 MH @	🐅 🕅 – Sumi	ta SuzziDaz					_	
		_ <u>_</u>	20 🕖 🖓	ta • 🗉 • Event	ts - EventPro				_		×
Home View	Tools										
Navigation #	×	📌 Events 🗙									-
Events		Status	Book #	Date From 🔻	Date To	Client		Event Name		- 0	Co
		Completed	4	Tue Feb 21 2017	Tue Feb 21 2017	Anima	ted Productions	Lizzy Lizard Live Family Shov	· ^		Co
Recently Accessed Events		Completed	2	Fri Feb 17 2017	Fri Feb 17 2017	Circle	of Help Foundation	Fundraising Banquet			N
ind Event		Completed	1	Sat Feb 11 2017	Sat Feb 11 2017	Additio	on Corp.	Employee Banquet			Co
ind Space		Confirmed	264	Thu Jan 26 2017	Thu Jan 26 2017	Talk M	lanufacturing	Business Banquet			С
💰 Create Event		Tentative	266	Confirmation		х	Taker Initiative	Conference & Expo			Co
Event List		Completed	236				d Management	Corporate Sessions			
		Confirmed	265	Are you sure y	ou want to exit the applica	ion?	пор	Corporate Banquet		C	Со
Venue Calendar		Confirmed	280				nc.	Business Conference & Expo)		
📝 Event Calendar		Confirmed	263	Yes	No		Ltd.	Corporate Banquet		: C	Co
		Completed	113	1011 DCC 13 2010	1011 DCC 17 2020	rame	n College	College Banquet			Co
		Completed	116	Sat Dec 17 2016	Mon Dec 19 2016	Notar	y Professionals Association	Professional Seminar			
		Completed	115	Fri Dec 16 2016	Sun Dec 18 2016	Cedor	e Professional Association	Training Seminar			
		Confirmed	114	Fri Dec 16 2016	Fri Dec 16 2016	Morph	Industries	Industry Trade Show			De
🏠 My Workplace		Tentative	242	Tue Nov 29 2016	Tue Nov 29 2016	Magm	a Law LLC	Legal Presentations		D	De

• **NOTE**: If you see the **Confirm Navigation** dialog, it means you are attempting to close the browser tab or window without closing EventPro.

Opt to stay on the page. Then, to ensure that you have logged out properly, click the X in the upper right corner of the **EventPro application window**, as noted above.

Citrix Receiver	© EventPro × +	
÷)→ C' û	③ ▲ https://doud.eventpro.net/Citrix/StoreWeb/dients/HTML5 … ♥ ☆ Q Search	III\ 🗊
	EN English (United States)	Help 📮
Ç ∓ Ç View Tools	EventPro	- 🗆 ×
Navigation # ×		
My Workplace My Details	This page is asking you to confirm that you want to leave - data you have entered may not be saved.	
Task Calendar	Leave Page Stay on Page	
EventPro		

Update Cloud Software

You will not need to download and install anything to update the EventPro Cloud application.

If there has been a software update since you last logged in, a dialog will inform you that the database version is older than the application and needs to be updated. You simply need to click **OK** to initiate the update.



Note, however, that as long as you continue a logged in session (some users prefer to stay logged from day to day), the software will not update. You need to log out and log back in again to see the notification dialog and initiate the update.

Therefore, to ensure that all of your users are always working in the most up-to-date version of the software, you should:

- 1. Sign up to receive software update notifications from EventPro.
- 2. Upon receiving a notification, instruct all users to log out and log back in so that they confirm the software update.

EventPro Cloud on Mobile Device

- You can access your EventPro Cloud application from mobile devices such as iPhones, iPads, Android Tablets & Phones, *etc*.
- This topic will describe the general process of installing Citrix Workspace and accessing EventPro Cloud on a mobile device, but please note that the specific process will vary, depending on the make, model and functions of your device.
- 1. Your first step is to download Citrix Workspace.

Typically, you can find the **Citrix Workspace app** on the iTunes App Store (Apple iOS devices) or Google Play (Android devices), but if neither of those options are applicable to you, there are other versions available for download on the Citrix website.

- 2. After you install the app, tap to open it.
- 3. If this is the first time opening the Citrix Workspace app, you may get a screen explaining that Citrix Receiver has been upgraded to Citrix Workspace.
 - a. The Learn More button will direct you to a website with more information about Citrix Workspace.
 - b. Tap Got It to continue to the Citrix Workspace app.

Citrix Receiver is now Citrix Workspace app
Citrix Workspace app extends the capabilities of Citrix Receiver, making it even easier for you to stay productive.
Got it
Learn More

4. On initial opening, you may also get the Citrix Workspace introduction screen. Tap **Get Started**.

Citrix Workspace	
Securely access your favorite apps and services in one place and access them anytime on any device	
Get Started	
Don't have an account? Try the demo .	

5. The **Welcome** or **Add Account** screen asks you to enter your company email address or Store URL.

Enter cloud.eventpro.net (or https://cloud.eventpro.net, depending on which format your device accepts), and tap Continue.

<		\M	elcor	no			
		vv	eicoi	ne			
		et started, email addr					
ſ	ີງ clou	ıd.eventpr	o.net			6	
U	lse sma	art card				0	
		С	ontinu	ıe			
q	we	e r	t y	/ L	ı i	i o	р
а	s	d f	g	h	j	k	I
¢	z	xc	V	b	n	m	\bigotimes
123	٢		1	.c	om	Con	tinue

6. Next, the Sign In page asks for your Username and Password.



a. **User Name**: Your EventPro Cloud **Login User Name**, which typically combines your User Name, an underscore (_), and your 6-digit Client ID, *e.g.* name_000000.

You can review the default credentials under **Run Citrix Workspace & Add Account** above.

- b. **Password**: Your EventPro Cloud login password.
- c. Tap **Sign In** or **Log On**, or the applicable button on your device.
- 7. You will then go to the main page of the app, which could be **Home** or **Apps**, depending on your device.

In our example, Workspace opens to the **Apps** page, which displays all of the apps available to you on Citrix Workspace.

	St	ore Service	Q
Q Sea	ırch		
0	EventPro		+
	r		Č Settings

- 8. You can add your EventPro app to your **Favorites** page so that it is easily accessible.
 - a. Check the **Favorites** area of the Citrix Workspace app.

If you have logged into Citrix Workspace and configured it before, even just on the desktop application, your **EventPro** app may already be added to your **Favorites** page.

		Favorites	Edit
0	EventPro		
_			ىك
Favorite		Apps	\$ Settings

b. If the Favorites screen is empty, you can add the EventPro app now.



c. The method of adding favorite apps will vary, depending on your device.

In our example, we return to the Apps screen, and tap the plus sign (+) next to the EventPro app icon. Depending on your region, your program icon will be called **EventPro**, **EventPro** AU or **EventPro** EU.

A checkmark will appear next to the EventPro app icon, indicating that it has been added to Favorites, and if you go to the **Favorites** page, you will see the EventPro app there.

	St	ore Service		Q
Q Sea	rch			
0	EventPro		~	/
	-		يەر	
Favor		Apps	C Settings	

9. Before starting the EventPro app, you should probably adjust your Settings.

The available **Settings** will vary depending on the make of your mobile device. You may need to experiment with using EventPro Cloud on your device to determine which settings work the best.

a. Go to the **Settings** area in the Citrix Workspace app.

	Settings	Log Off
GENERAL		
Display Options		>
Keyboard Optior	าร	>
Audio		
Advanced		>
Citrix X1 Mouse		>
SECURITY		
Security Token		>
HELP		
Support		>
About		>
Review Citrix Wo	orkspace	>
Favorites	Apps	\$ Settings
ravoites	uhhe e	seculys

- b. Three areas under which you will likely need to adjust settings are Keyboard, Advanced, and Display.
 - i. If there is some sort of "**Extended Keyboard**" option, you will probably find it useful to turn it on. You may need to enable various extended keyboard functions individually under the **Keyboard** settings.

You may also want to enable the clipboard, which may involve turning on an "**Enable clipboard**" setting, or enabling various clipboard functions individually (**Cut**, **Copy**, **Paste**, *etc*.).

<	Settings	Log Off
`	Settings	Log on
Use Unicode	e Keyboard	
Use Custom	Keyboards	
Alt		
Alt+Tab		
Close Windo	w	
Сору		
Ctrl		
Ctrl+Alt+Del		
Ctrl+Esc		
Cut		
Del		
Final		
*		\$
Favorites	Apps	Settings

ii. Under Advanced settings, you may want to turn on the "Ask Before Exiting" option, if available.



iii. Choosing a **Display** option is up to your personal preference. If you want the EventPro window to adjust to your device screen automatically, look for some sort of "**Auto-Fit**" setting.

<	Settings	Log Off
Auto-fit Screen	I	
Small		
Medium		~
Large		
External Displa	у	
Presentation M	ode	
*		¢
Favorites	Apps	Settings

10. You can now start EventPro Cloud.

Go to your **Favorites** page, and **tap** your EventPro Cloud app icon to begin.

The EventPro application will start.

		Favorites	E	Edit
0	EventPro			
		Q		
		EventPro		
	~		¢	
Favor	ites	Apps		

11. You may need to wait a few moments as EventPro loads.



12. If you have more than one database to choose from, select the relevant database from the drop-down list and tap Log On. If you only have one database, you will not have to perform this step.



13. When EventPro opens, the size of the application window will vary, depending on your **Display** settings.You can tap the **Maximize** and **Restore Down** commands in the upper right corner of the application window.



14. Tap the grid icon at the bottom middle of the screen to open the Citrix Workspace toolbar.





15. To log out of the EventPro application, either tap the "x" in the upper right corner of the application window, or use the **Close** command in the Citrix Workspace toolbar. (*The* **Home** command takes you back to the Workspace home screen, but leaves the EventPro application running in the background.)

The **Confirmation** dialog asks if you are sure that you want to exit the application. Tap **Yes** to exit EventPro, and return to the Citrix Workspace app.



Get Your Software: Installed

- This chapter describes the process of installing EventPro Software on a computer or network.
- **NOTE**: EventPro Software installation should only be done by an **IT Specialist** with sufficient IT knowledge and understanding of your organization's network. Installing EventPro Software requires knowledge of SQL Server, and sometimes Active Directory.
- First, review the introductory information under <u>Options and Requirements</u> 661:
 - o Options and Requirements 6
 - <u>Minimum System Requirements</u> ল
 - Installation Types 67
 - Authentication Modes
 - <u>Active Directory Integration</u>
- Then, after determining the type of installation you will be performing, proceed to the chapter relevant to your installation:
 - o <u>Standalone Install</u>
 - **Network Installation**: There are several different options for Network Installation.
 - The network installation of EventPro involves a multiple-user network environment in which the EventPro application is hosted on the **application server**, the EventPro database is hosted on the **database server**, and the Users run EventPro from their **Workstations**. Your administrator will install EventPro to the application server, and then go through a separate installation process for each Workstation.
 - A network installation of EventPro Software requires knowledge of SQL Server and, in some cases, Active Directory, which are best managed by an IT Specialist familiar with your organization's computer system. If you are not certain about how to proceed with a network installation, please contact your EventPro Implementation & Training Specialist or EventPro Support.
 - <u>Network Install: Windows Authentication</u>
 - <u>Network Install: Active Directory Integration</u> (requires EventPro Active Directory Module)
 - o <u>Network Install: SQL Authentication</u> [231]
- Once you have installed EventPro Software, there are some other topics you may want to review:
 - o <u>EventPro Desktop Shortcuts</u> 288
 - o Update Software License 288
 - o <u>Update Your Software</u> 291

Options and Requirements

Before installing EventPro, review the following topics for important information about installation options and requirements:

- <u>Minimum System Requirements</u>
- Installation Types 67
- Authentication Modes
- Active Directory Integration 67

Minimum System Requirements

• You can find the technical requirements for EventPro Software at:

https://www.eventpro.net/technical-requirements.html

 In particular, look for the requirements under EventPro Local Network Installed Edition (Hosted on your server/desktop), Optional Module Suites (Installed Edition), and Administrator Requirements (Installed Edition).

Installation Types

When installing EventPro Software, you can choose between two different installation types:

- Stand Alone Installation: This is a single-user environment where the application is installed on one machine.
- Server/Workstation (Network) Installation: This is a multiple-user network environment where the EventPro application is hosted on the application server, the EventPro database is hosted on the database server, and the Users run EventPro from their Workstations.

In this situation, you need to install EventPro to the application server, and then go through a separate installation process for each Workstation.

- **Application Server**: This is the computer on which you install the EventPro application.
- o Database Server: This is the computer that runs SQL Server and hosts your EventPro database.
- Application Workstations: These are the computers from which Users will be logging into EventPro.
- **Domain Controller**: If you are working in a domain environment, the Domain Controller hosts the domain in which you will be creating User Security Groups.

Authentication Modes

EventPro Software uses SQL databases, which means you need SQL Server.

SQL Server supports two Authentication Modes.

The Authentication Mode determines how the Users connect to SQL Server and validate their credentials:

- Windows Authentication Mode: With Windows Authentication, the Users connect to the SQL Server using their Windows user accounts. SQL Server validates the User accounts and passwords using information from the Windows operating system.
- **Mixed Mode** (which enables both **SQL Server Authentication** and **Windows Authentication**): With SQL Server Authentication, Users connect to SQL Server with logins that are created by and stored in SQL Server, not based on Windows user accounts.

Active Directory Integration

The optional EventPro Active Directory module provides for Active Directory Integration.

Active Directory is sub-divided into one or multiple **Domains** (a collection of network objects that share a common directory database), with each Domain hosted by a server computer called a **Domain Controller**.

Within a **Domain**, you can organize users into **Security Groups**, and then assign each Security Group the appropriate **user rights** to access specified domain resources, such as data and applications.

With EventPro's Active Directory Integration, you can map those **Active Directory Security Groups** to **EventPro Security Roles**. When a User runs EventPro, he/she will be automatically assigned the correct user permissions in EventPro according to his/her Active Directory group membership. The advantage of Active Directory Integration for the EventPro administrator is the efficiency of account administration. Instead of manually entering users in EventPro, the administrator can create a login for an entire User Security Group at once. When Active Directory Users run EventPro for the first time, an EventPro User will be created with select information passed from Active Directory, including the relevant EventPro Security Role.

The advantage of Active Directory for the EventPro end users is the single sign-on capability. When a user logs onto a computer (workstation) in the domain, Active Directory authenticates the user - *i.e.* confirms the user's identity - and grants the user authorization to access the appropriate domain resources. In other words, once users log on to the domain, they can run EventPro without logging in a second time.

Please note that Active Directory Integration requires the separately purchased EventPro Active Directory module.

Standalone Install

- A **Standalone Install** occurs in a single-user environment where the EventPro application is installed on only one machine.
- Although a standalone installation is less complex than network installation, it still requires knowledge of SQL Server, which is best managed by your organization's IT Specialist. If you do not have in-house IT to assist you with EventPro installation, the instructions below will guide you through the general process, but if you have any doubts about how to proceed, please contact EventPro Support.
- These instructions only cover one standard set of options that typically work under normal circumstances. For more options, you will require assistance from an IT specialist who is familiar with your organization's computer system.
- Also note that these instructions describe the installation of the base EventPro application. You may have purchased additional modules that also require installation. Unless otherwise advised, you should download all of the software components available to you, and consult with your Support or Training Specialist for assistance with installation.
- Installation Instructions:
 - 1. Download EventPro Components
 - 2. Install SQL Server 70
 - 3. Configure SQL Server 73
 - 4. Install Data Updater 77
 - 5. <u>Create New Client Database</u> 79
 - 6. <u>Restore Existing Database over New</u>
 - 7. Install EventPro 89
 - 8. First Login to EventPro 94
- In this sample installation process, we follow a particular sequence of steps to prepare your EventPro database. We run
 the EventPro Database Utility Wizard to create two databases: EventProMaster, a required database that controls
 program licensing, and a named database, typically called EventProData, which is initially blank. This new, blank
 EventProData database is essentially just a "placeholder" database. You most likely have received and saved a backup
 of an existing, prepared database from your EventPro Training or Support Specialist. We will restore that existing,
 prepared EventPro database backup over the blank "placeholder" database, so that EventProData will then contain your
 existing information. After that, we will install EventPro.
- Note that there is another slightly different sequence of steps that you can follow after installing the Data Updater. You can consult with your IT department and/or EventPro Support or Training Specialist to determine which sequence to follow. In this alternate process, you first restore the backup of the existing, prepared EventPro database, typically naming it EventProData. You then install EventPro Software to add the EventProMaster database, although you do not yet run the EventPro program. You then run the Database Utility Wizard to link the client database to the EventProMaster database ("Create Master Database Client ID"). Finally, you can run EventPro. For more details about this process, see <u>Alternate Database Restore Process</u> ²²⁰.
Download EventPro Components

- 1. Log on to the computer on which you will be using EventPro Software.
- 2. Proceed to the EventPro website and login to the Client Login area with your 6-digit license User ID.

3. Go to the **Downloads** area.

Downloads	× +							— C	ב
→ C' 🏠	i myaccount.eventpro.net/Dow	vnloads/		⊠ ☆	Q Search		:	<u>↓</u> III\	•
								🔒 Lo	ogout
Profit Established in 19		C Event	evelopers of Pro ®	PMX per	ť			0000	000
🏠 Home	🔏 My Account 🛛 🚢 Download	l 🔅 What's	New	📤 Upload Fil	e	? Manual	🔀 Му	Preference	25
bownloa	ds								
e this link to access	your cloud portal: Cloud Login								
	Workspace app: Click here								
ou need the clanx	workspace app. Click here								
eview/Accept th	inding License Agreement before downloading. cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C	5		,					
eview/Accept th You must accept the b I am authorized to acc	the EventPro Software Program Linding License Agreement before downloading. cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C I review the license agreement. Get Lice	Corporate Inc. with Client		id I accept the Eve		re Program Licens			
eview/Accept th You must accept the b I am authorized to acc	the EventPro Software Program Linding License Agreement before downloading. cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C I review the license agreement. Get Lice File Name	Corporate Inc. with Client	t ID 000000 ar	nd I accept the Eve Date	entPro Softwa	re Program Licens			
eview/Accept the You must accept the b I am authorized to acc ease download and Click Download file	the EventPro Software Program Lining License Agreement before downloading. Cept Software License Agreements on behalf of Contract of the Contract of the License agreement. Get License Agreement file Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Corporate Inc. with Client	t ID 000000 ar 146,187KB	nd I accept the Eve Date 10-May-2019 01:	ntPro Softwar	re Program Licens Description *Required*	e Agreement		
eview/Accept th You must accept the b I am authorized to acc	the EventPro Software Program Linding License Agreement before downloading. cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C I review the license agreement. Get Lice File Name	Corporate Inc. with Client cense Agreement Size	t ID 000000 ar 146,187KB	nd I accept the Eve Date	entPro Softwar 53 PM 54 PM	re Program Licens Description *Required* EventPro Co		ietup	
eview/Accept the You must accept the b I am authorized to acc ease download and Click Download file Download file	the EventPro Software Program Li inding License Agreement before downloading, cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C I review the license agreement. Get Lice File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Corporate Inc. with Client cense Agreement Size	t ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB	Date 10-May-2019 01: 10-May-2019 01:	entPro Softwar 53 PM 54 PM 55 PM	re Program Licens Description *Required* EventPro Co	e Agreement innect Setup tualAssistant S	Setup	
eview/Accept the You must accept the b I am authorized to acc ease download and Click Download file Download file Download file	the EventPro Software Program Li inding License Agreement before downloading. cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C I review the license agreement. Get Lic File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Corporate Inc. with Client eense Agreement Size	t ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB	Date 10-May-2019 01: 10-May-2019 01: 10-May-2019 01:	entPro Softwar 53 PM 54 PM 55 PM 58 PM	re Program Licens Description *Required* EventPro Cc EventPro Ap EventPro Ap	e Agreement innect Setup tualAssistant S		
eview/Accept the Vou must accept the b I am authorized to acc ease download and Click Download file Download file Download file	the EventPro Software Program Li inding License Agreement before downloading. cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C I review the license agreement. Get Lic File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Corporate Inc. with Client eense Agreement Size	146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB 126,774KB 113,977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01	53 PM 54 PM 55 PM 58 PM 58 PM 57 PM	re Program Licens Description *Required* EventPro Co EventPro Ap License Upd	e Agreement innect Setup tualAssistant S		
eview/Accept the Vou must accept the b I am authorized to acc ease download and Click Download file Download file Download file Download file Download file	te EventPro Software Program Li inding License Agreement before downloading. cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C I review the license agreement. Get Lic File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Corporate Inc. with Client eense Agreement Size	146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB 126,774KB 113,977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01	53 PM 54 PM 55 PM 58 PM 58 PM 57 PM	re Program Licens Description *Required* EventPro Co EventPro Ap License Upd	e Agreement nnect Setup tualAssistant S ii ater/Database		
eview/Accept the Vou must accept the b I am authorized to acc ease download and Click Download file Download file Download file Download file Download file	te EventPro Software Program Li inding License Agreement before downloading. cept Software License Agreements on behalf of C I review the license agreement. Get Lic File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Corporate Inc. with Client eense Agreement Size	146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB 126,774KB 113,977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01 10-May-2019 01	53 PM 54 PM 55 PM 58 PM 57 PM 57 PM 54 AM	re Program Licens Description *Required* EventPro Co EventPro Ap License Upd	e Agreement innect Setup tualAssistant S ii ater/Database pur license file	Tool	nc

- 4. If you haven't already, download all of the EventPro components that you see in the Downloads grid.
 - a. The components you see in your **Downloads** grid represent the EventPro application and modules that you have purchased, so your screen may look different than the example screenshot.
 - b. The installation instructions below will describe the main components required for the core EventPro program: EventPro (EventPro.Win.Setup.exe), EventPro License Updater/Database Tool (EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.exe), and EventPro Licence (Licence.ini).

However, depending on your purchase, you may have additional components to download.

Download all components that you see, and if you have any questions about installing additional components or modules, contact your Support or Training Specialist.

c. Note that you will need to accept the License Agreement before you can download files.

If you want to review the content of the License Agreement, click the **Get License Agreement** button to retrieve the agreement in .RTF format. This is the same License Agreement that must be agreed to during EventPro installation.

- While downloading the files, take note of the folder to which you save these files so that you can later retrieve them.
 Do not open or run the files yet. The instructions below will inform you when you need each file.
- 6. Proceed to Install SQL Server 70.

Install SQL Server

EventPro Software uses **SQL databases**, meaning you will need to install **SQL Server** to your computer, if it is not installed already.

You can buy an edition of SQL Server, or download the free edition, SQL Server Express, from the Microsoft website. Also, be sure to review the <u>minimum technical requirements</u> for EventPro Software.

- 1. Download the **SQL Server** installation file and run the installer.
- 2. Follow the installation documentation provided with your edition of SQL Server.
 - a. The instructions below will simply note the critical settings for SQL Server when used for EventPro Software.
 - b. The screenshots below demonstrate SQL Server Express, although regardless of which edition you use, the important settings will be the same.
 - c. There are other settings and options in the installation process that these instructions will not describe, as they will vary, depending on the IT needs of your organization. Please consult with your IT Department for further guidance on installing and configuring SQL Server.
- 3. Feature Selection:

	髋 SQL Server 2017 Setup				-		\times
SQL Server Instal	Feature Selection Select the Express features to in	ıstall.					
Maintenance Tools Resources Options	License Terms Global Rules Microsoft Update Product Updates Install Setup Files Install Rules Feature Selection Feature Rules Instance Configuration Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules Installation Progress Complete	 Looking for Reporting Service Features: Database Engine Services SQL Server Replication Machine Learning Service Python Full-Text and Semanti PolyBase Query Service Shared Features Client Tools Connectivity Client Tools Backwards Co Client Tools SDK SQL Client Connectivity SI LocalDB Redistributable Features 	rices (In-Database) = Extractions for Search e for External Data ompatibility	web Feature description: The configuration and operating SQL Server instance is isolated SQL Server instances can oper computer. Prerequisites for selected feature Already installed:	l from other SQL Serve ate side-by-side on th res: i Redistributable or higher k 4.6	er instance	
Microsoft SQI		Select All Unselect All Instance root directory: Shared feature directory: Shared feature directory (x86):	C:\Program Files\Microsoft C:\Program Files\Microsoft C:\Program Files (x86)\Micr	SQL Server\	Next >	 Cance	

a. You should select the checkboxes for:

i. Database Engine Services

ii. Client Tools Connectivity

iii. Client Tools Backward Compatibility

b. Depending on the edition of SQL Server you are installing, there may be a checkbox for **Management Tools**; if so, **select** that checkbox, as well.

If there is not a Management Tools option in the edition you are installing, you can download and install **SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS)** after installing SQL Server.

- c. Whether you select the other Feature checkboxes is up to your IT department.
- d. The default **directories** are typically fine as they are, unless your IT department says otherwise.

4. Instance Configuration:

	🏗 SQL Server 2017 Setup							\times
📸 SQL Server Install	Instance Configuration							
Planning Installation			QL Server, Instance ID becomes par	t of the installation path.				
Maintenance License Terms Tools Global Rules Resources Microsoft Update Product Updates Product Updates	Global Rules Microsoft Update	 Default instance Named instance: 	SQLExpress					
Options	Options Install Setup Files Instance ID: Install Rules Feature Selection Feature Rules SQL Server of Instance Configuration	Instance ID:	SQLEXPRESS					
F		SQL Server directory: Installed instances:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se	erver\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRESS				
	Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules Installation Progress Complete	Instance Name	Instance ID	Features	Edition		/ersion	
Microsoft SQL					< Back N	lext >	Cance	e

- a. Select the radio button next to "Named Instance".
- b. You can leave the **Named Instance** and **Instance ID** as **SQLExpress**, unless there is another name you prefer to use.
- c. The **Installed Instances** grid at the bottom of this page would display any instances already installed. If there is already an installed instance, check with your IT Department whether you should use that instance.

5. Server Configuration:

	髋 SQL Server 2017 Setup				-	• >
SQL Server Instal Planning Installation	Server Configuration Specify the service accounts a	nd collation configuration.				
Installation Maintenance Tools Resources Options	License Terms Global Rules Microsoft Update Product Updates Install Setup Files Install Rules Feature Selection Feature Rules Instance Configuration Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules Installation Progress Complete	Service SQL Server Database Engine SQL Server Browser	a separate account for each SQL Server servic Account Name NT Service\MSSQLSSQLEXPRESS NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE ce Task privilege to SQL Server Database Eng initialization by avoiding zeroing of data page accessed.	Password	Startup Automat Automat	ic ~
Microsoft SQ				< Back N	lext >	Cancel

a. The Startup Type for both SQL Server Database Engine and SQL Server Browser must be set to Automatic.

b. If not already done, you may need to switch the SQL Server Browser Start Type to Automatic.

6. Database Engine Configuration:

SQL Server Installation Center		
Database Engine Confi	guration	
Specify Database Engine authe	ntication security mode, administrators, data directories and TempDB settings.	
License Terms Global Rules	Server Configuration Data Directories TempDB User Instances FILESTREAM	
Microsoft Update Product Updates	Specify the authentication mode and administrators for the Database Engine.	
Install Setup Files	Windows authentication mode	
Install Rules Feature Selection	O Mixed Mode (SQL Server authentication and Windows authentication)	
Feature Rules	Specify the password for the SQL Server system administrator (sa) account.	
Instance Configuration Server Configuration	Enter password:	
Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules	Confirm password:	
Installation Progress	Specify SQL Server administrators PSI\Sample (Sample) SQL	L Server administrators have
Complete	uni	L server administrators have restricted access to the tabase Engine.
	Add Current User Add Remove	
	< Back	Next > Cancel

a. Under the Account Provisioning tab, indicate which Authentication Mode the administrator will use to access the Database Engine: Windows Authentication or Mixed Mode (SQL Server Authentication and Windows Authentication).

Because this is a standalone, single-user environment, we would typically select Windows Authentication.

- b. Also, under the Specify SQL Sever Administrators grid, click the Add Current User button.
- 7. Complete the rest of the installation process as recommended by your IT Department.
- 8. As noted <u>above</u> 71, if there isn't a **Management Tools** option in the edition you are installing, you can download and install **SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS)** after installing SQL Server.

There may be a prompt to **Install SSMS** at the end of the SQL Server Installer, or you can download **SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS)** from the Microsoft website.

- 9. It is recommended that you restart your computer once SQL Server is installed. If you install SQL Server Management Studio separately, you will be prompted to restart your computer at the end of the installation process.
- 10. You can then proceed to **<u>Configure SQL Server</u>** 73.

Configure SQL Server

- 1. After restarting the computer, open the Start menu, and run SQL Server Configuration Manager.
- 2. The SQL Server Configuration Manager opens.

- a. In the left-hand panel, go to **SQL Server Network Configuration > Protocols for SQLEXPRESS** (or whatever you named the SQL Server Instance <u>earlier</u> 71).
- b. In the right-hand selection grid, you need to enable **both TCP/IP** and **Named Pipes**.
- c. Right-click **TCP/IP** and select **Enable**.

Sql Server Configuration Manager				_	\times
File Action View Help					
🗢 🔿 🚈 🖾 🔒 🛛					
 SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) SQL Server Services SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configuration Protocols for SQLEXPRESS SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration Client Protocols Aliases Aliases 	Protocol Name Shared Memory Named Pipes	Status Enabled Disable	I		
Enable selected protocol.][

d. The **Warning** dialog informs you that changes will not take effect until the service is restarted, which we will do shortly.

🔚 Sql Server Configuration Manager				_	\times
File Action View Help					
🗢 🔿 🛅 📓 📓					
 SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) SQL Server Services SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configuration Protocols for SQLEXPRESS 		Protocol Name Shared Memory Named Pipes	Status Enabled Enabled Disabled		
SQL Native Client 11.0 Configur				×	
ঞ্চু Client Protocols ₽ Aliases		es made will be saved; ho the service is stopped ar	owever, they will not take nd restarted. OK		
		11			

- e. Click **OK**, and you will see that **TCP/IP** is now **Enabled**.
- f. Now, if necessary, repeat the process with **Named Pipes**. Right-click **Named Pipes** and select **Enable**. Click **OK** in the **Warning** dialog that follows.
- g. Both TCP/IP and Named Pipes should now be Enabled.

If applicable, you may also want to check the Protocols under SQL Native Client Configuration and SQL Native Client Configuration (32bit) to ensure that **TCP/IP** and **Named Pipes** are **Enabled** there, as well.



3. In the left-hand panel, go to SQL Server Configuration Manager (local) > SQL Server Services.

In the selection grid to the right, select **SQL Server (SQLEXPRESS)** and click the **Restart** button **C** above. The service will stop and restart.

🚟 Sql Server Configuration Manager					_		×
File Action View Help							
💠 🔿 🖄 🔚 🕞 🛛 🕑 💌 📀							
SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) Restar	rt service	State	Start Mode	Log On As	Process ID	Service Ty	pe
SQL Server Services	SQL Server (SQLEXPRESS)	Running	Automatic	NT Service\MSSQL\$SQLEXPRESS	2652	SQL Server	
SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit)	SQL Server Agent (SQLEXPRESS)	Stopped	Other (Boot, Sys	NT AUTHORITY\NETWORKSERVICE	0	SQL Agent	t
 SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) Client Protocols 	o SQL Server Browser	Running	Automatic	NT AUTHORITY\LOCALSERVICE	4732	-	
🖶 Aliases							
SQL Server Network Configuration							
Generation SQLEXPRESS ✓ SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration							
Scenario Configuration							
Aliases							
,							
	<						2

4. Check to ensure that the **SQL Server Browser** is **Running**.

If it is not, you can try to start it by clicking the **Start** button above. This may not work, however, as there could be other reasons that the SQL Server Browser is not running. For example, you may need to go to the **Services** area to manually enable it there.

If you run into any issues here or any other part of SQL Server Configuration, please **contact Support** for assistance.

5. You can now close the **SQL Server Configuration Manager** window.

6. Next, proceed to Install Data Updater 77.

Install Data Updater

- 1. Navigate to the **EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.exe** that you downloaded <u>earlier</u> (6), and double-click to run it.
- 2. The installation wizard will begin. Click Next to continue.



3. Select Installation Folder: If you don't want to use the default path, you can enter a different folder path.

Click Next.

🐻 EventPro Data Updater Setup		_		\times
Select Installation Folder			<	1
This is the folder where EventPro Data Updater will be	e installed.		X	
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a diffe "Browse".	erent folder, ente	er it bel	ow or click	
Folder:				
C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro Software\DataUp	odater		Browse	
dvanced Installer				
< Bac	k Next >		Cance	4
the next window, click Install .				
b EventPro Data Updater Setup				×
Ready to Install			<	
The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data	a Updater installa	tion	N	-22
				*
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to installation settings, click "Back". Click "Cancel" to exi	review or change t the wizard.	e any o	f your	
dvanced Installer				
avanced Installer	k 💡 Insta		Cance	J
< 840		211	Cance	

You may encounter a security warning, for which you may need to click **Yes** or **OK**.

5. When the installation completes, click **Finish** in the final window.

4.



6. Next, proceed to <u>Create New Client Database</u> 79.

Create New Client Database

In most cases, an existing database will be prepared for you, containing information that has been converted from a previous database or added under the guidance of your EventPro Training & Implementation Specialist. That database will be sent to you so that you can restore it.

Before restoring the database, however, this process requires that you first **create a new database** with the EventPro Database Utility. The new database you are creating here is essentially a **placeholder**. Later, you will restore your existing database over this new "placeholder" database.

- 1. Run the **EventPro Database Utility Wizard** by selecting **EventPro Data Updater** from your **Start** Menu, or doubleclicking the **EventPro Data Updater application file** in the folder to which you installed it.
- 2. On the first page of the wizard, select Create a New Client Database, and click Next.



3. Target Database:

Enter the target database information.

E 10	D 1 1	Distance.
EventPro	Database	Utility

Target Database

Enter the target database information.

Database Type	MS-SQL	•
Server	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	
Authentication		
User name		
Password		
Database	EventProData	•
Settings		
Client I.D.	000000	
Cloud Data		
Database Data Type	Standard	•
License File	C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro 19\EventPro\Licence.ini	

- a. Database Type: Choose MS-SQL.
- b. Server: Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when <u>installing SQL Server</u> [71] (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS").

It will look something like this: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS

- c. **Authentication**: Leave the **Authentication** checkbox unselected, indicating that the User will connect to the SQL Server instance using **Windows Authentication**.
- d. **Database**: Type in (*don't select from the drop-down*) the name of the new database you are creating, *e.g.* **EventProData**.

The Data Updater will create 2 databases:

- i. This named database (*i.e.* EventProData), over which you will later restore the existing, prepared database from your Training or Support Specialist.
- ii. An EventProMaster database to control licensing.
- e. Client I.D.: Typically, you would use your six-digit License ID for the Client I.D.
- f. Cloud Data: Leave this unselected, as you are installing EventPro to your computer.
- g. Database Data Type: From the drop-down list, choose Blank or Standard.

×

- i. **Standard** means the database will be populated with some basic default data, namely Statuses, Titles, Communication References, Booth Types, Budget Types, Payment Types, Location Features, and Location Setup Types. Clients typically choose **Standard**, as they find it easier than starting from a completely blank database that has no frame of reference. The pre-entered status, titles, *etc.* can easily be edited to suit your organization's terminology.
- ii. Blank means a completely blank database, with no pre-entered data.

Since you will be restoring an existing database over this new database, it doesn't really matter which data type you select.

- h. License File: Click the ellipsis (...) and browse to your license file (Licence.ini). This is the license file you downloaded earlier
- i. When you have entered all of the target database information, click Next.
- 4. The last page of the wizard will inform you that the process is complete. Click **Finish**.
- 5. You can now proceed to **<u>Restore Existing Database over New</u>** 2.

Restore Existing Database over New

In most cases, an EventPro Training or Support Specialist will provide you with a **database** that has been converted from a previous database and/or filled with information that you have provided.

You need to restore that database to the SQL Server before proceeding with EventPro installation.

With this process, you will be restoring the existing database **over** the new "**placeholder**" database you just created in the previous step.

Typically, the database is sent as a .BAK file, which you can restore in SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS).

1. Run SQL Server Management Studio.

You may have a different version of SQL Server Management Studio than that depicted below, but the functions and settings should be essentially the same.

- 2. The **Connect to Server** dialog appears.
 - a. Ensure that the correct **Server name** is selected. The format will be Network Computer Name\Named Instance, *e.g.* MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS, if you called the Instance SQLEXPRESS when installing SQL Server <u>earlier</u> 71.
 - b. Select **Windows Authentication**, assuming that you selected Windows Authentication as the Authentication Mode.
 - c. Click Connect.

Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio File Edit View Project Tools Window Image: Image	Query 📄 🕅 DAY DAY XMLA DAY	X □ A 9 • C • 図 ♬ 29 82 副 国 国 国 □ 国 国 王 王 • ∓ ×		• _ ۹	×
Connect - ¥ ¥ = ∀ ♂ →					
	₽ ☐ Connect to Server		×		
	Server type:	SQL Server	~		
	Server name:	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS			
	Authentication:	Windows Authentication	~		
	User name:	PSI\Sample	~		
	Password:				
		Remember password			
	[Connect Cancel Help (Options >>		
🗇 Ready					

- 3. In the **Object Explorer** panel of **Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio**, expand the **Databases**. You should be able to see the **EventProData** and **EventProMaster** databases, which you would have created in the previous step (<u>Create New Client Database</u> 79).
- 4. Right-click on **EventProData**, and select **Tasks > Restore > Database**.

File Edit View Pro	er Management Studio oject Tools Window H ~ 🎦 🔛 🍟 🖨 New Query ~ 📋 🕨 Execute	elp ● & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & &	Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q) ▼ ↓ Ξ Ξ= 100 ↓	P = □ × F = ▷ · ;
	EXPRESS (SQL Server 14.0 tabases inapshots New Database New Query			
 H Replication PolyBase H Management XEvent Profiles 	Start PowerShell Azure Data Studio Reports Rename Delete Refresh	Vulnerability Assessment		
<	Properties	Restore Generate Scripts Extract Data-tier Application Deploy Database to Microsoft Azure SQL Database Export Data-tier Application Upgrade Data-tier Application Import Flat File Import Data Export Data Export Data	Database Files and Filegroups Transaction Log	

- 5. The **Restore Database** window appears.
- 6. Under **Source**, select **Device**, and click the ellipsis next to the field.
 - a. The Select Backup Devices dialog appears.

	💦 🌄 R	estore Database - EventProDa	ta			_		×	∎ ×
File	😵 No	backupset selected to be restor	ed.						6 B H
		t a page	🗐 Script 👻 😧 Help						µ≞÷
Conne Conne	File File For	eneral es otions Select backup devices Specify the backup media and	Script → Pelp Source O Database: O Database: Device: Database: Destination Database: Restore to: } dits location for your restore opera	Event Pro Data			Timelin ×	> • • • •	× ≞ ;
P Rea	Conn VH F I View Progr	Backup media:	File		OK Can	Add Remove Contents		> dia p	

- b. Click the Add button. The Locate Backup File window appears.
- c. In the **Locate Backup File** window, locate the **existing database** that your EventPro Trainer sent to you, and which you saved to your computer.

R 1	Ŗ Restore Database - EventProl	Data — 🗆 🗙	□ ×
File 1	😢 No backupset selected to be rest	ored.	e !!
G T	Select a page General Files	🗊 Script 🕞 🖌 😧 Help	<u>ب</u> ش م
Object		Source	
Conne		O Database:	
3 =	 Select backup devices Specify the backup media and its 	location for your restore operation.	
	Backup media type:		×
÷	Backup media:		Q
	view connection properties Progress Done Done	Windows Photo Viewer Windows Pottable Devices Windows PowerShell ProgramData PSI APPLICATIONS EventPro Software Data Updater Data Updater Downloads EventPro Windowsextant Windowsextant SQLServer2017Media System Volume Information VirtualBox Windowsextant Windowsextan	
		File name: 000000_Sample.bak Backup Files(*.bak;*.tm;*.log)	~
		OK Cancel	
🗁 Read	dy		

- d. Click **OK** in the **Locate Backup File** window, and again in the **Select Backup Devices** window to return to the **Restore Database** dialog.
- 7. Back in the Restore Database dialog, under Destination, the Database should be set to EventProData.

. <mark></mark> N	💀 Restore Database - EventProDat	3	-		х		×
File	🐼 No backupset selected to be restore	ł.					_ !!
8 G •	Select a page	I Script → 3 Help				ع	<u> </u>
8 ⋕ 1	 General Files Options 	Source					
Conne		O Database:			~		
		Device:]			
		Database:			~		
		Destination					
		Database: EventProData			~		
		Restore to:		Timeline			
Đ		Restore plan					
+		Backup sets to restore:					
±		Restore Name Component Type Server Database Position First LSN Las	st LSN Ch	ieckpoint L	.SN		
+							
	Connection						
	HY MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample]						
	View connection properties						
	Progress						
	One Done	<	Verify Ba	ckup Media	a		
		ОК	Cancel	Help			
🗇 Rea	dy					-	

8. Ensure that **Source Device Database** and **Destination Database** have been set correctly.

<u></u>	Microsoft SQL Server Management St	udio					Qu	ick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	ρ_	. 🗖	>
G ·	💀 Restore Database - EventProDat	ta							_		Х	
	🕕 Ready											-
Ŧ	Select a page	🗐 Script 🕞	😮 Hel	р								
bject Conne	🔎 Files	Source - Dat © De Destination Databa Restor Restore p	abase: vice: Database n ase: e to:	е: О Е	00000 ventProD ne last ba	PLICATIONS\Even ata ta Server SRVR\SQL02					 ~ Last 167	
	Connection Y# MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample] View connection properties Progress One	<									>	
								ОК	Verif Cancel	fy Backup M		

- 9. Under Select a Page in the left-hand panel, click Options. Select the Overwrite the Existing Database (WITH REPLACE) checkbox. (You want the restored, prepared database from EventPro Training/Support to overwrite the blank "placeholder" database that we created in the previous step.)
- 10. Click **OK** at the bottom of the **Restore Database** dialog to begin the restore process.

- 🌄	Microsoft SQL Server Management	Studio		Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	ρ	. 🗆	×	
File	💀 Restore Database - EventProDa	ta		_	- 🗆	Х		
š (Ready						≞ ‡	
	Select a page	🗊 Script 👻 😯 Help						
Obje Cor	e General Files Options		tabase (WITH REPLACE) settings (WITH KEEP_REPLICATION) istored database (WITH RESTRICTED_USE	R)				
L	Recovery state: RESTORE WITH RECOVERY							
		Standby file:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se	erver\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRESS\M	MSSQL\E			
	e	Leave the database ready to	use by rolling back uncommitted transaction	s. Additional transaction logs canr	not be restored			
	6 6 6 6 6	Tail-Log backup Taik- tail-log backup bef Leave source data (WITH NORECO) Backup file: Server connections	iore restore abase in the restoring state /ERY) C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se	erver\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRESS\M	MSSQL\E			
		Close existing connection	ns to destination database					
	Connection	Prompt Prompt before restoring e The Full-Text Upgrade database.	each backup e server property controls whether full-text ind	exes are imported, rebuilt, or reset	for the restore	d		
				OK Cancel	Help			
	Ready							

- 11. When the restore is complete, you should receive a dialog indicating "Database 'EventProData' restored successfully". Click OK.
- 12. You can now proceed to Install EventPro

Install EventPro

1. On your computer, navigate to the **EventPro.Win.Setup.exe** you <u>downloaded earlier</u>, and double-click to run it.

Depending on the security settings on your computer, you may receive a warning about installing software, and you may need to click **Run** or **OK** to continue the installation.

2. The installation wizard will begin. Click **Next** to continue.



3. End-User License Agreement:

- a. Please read the EventPro Software Program License Agreement.
- b. Select **I ACCEPT** or **I DO NOT ACCEPT** below. If you do not accept the license agreement, you cannot continue with the installation process.
- c. Click Next to continue.

🗟 EventPro Setup 🛛 🗙					
End-User License Agreement					
Please read the following license agreement carefully					
EventPro Software Program License					
Agreement					
READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS AND CONDITIONS BEFORE INSTALLING THIS SOFTWARE. INSTALLATION OR USE INDICATES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THEM, PROMPTLY					
I accept the terms in the License Agreement					
○ I <u>d</u> o not accept the terms in the License Agreement					
Advanced Installer					
< Back Next > Cancel					

4. Installation Type:

- a. Choose Stand Alone Installation.
- b. Click Next.

Installation Type	2
Select the type of installation to perform.	9
Stand Alone Installation	
O Server Installation	
O Workstation Installation	
Advanced Installer	
< Back Next > Cancel	

5. Installation Options:

- a. **Do not** select the checkbox next to **Use Active Directory to log into EventPro**. (*That option requires the EventPro Active Directory Module.*)
- b. Click Next.



6. Select Installation Folder:

- a. You can use the default **Program Files** path or enter a different path for the **Installation Folder**.
- b. It depends on your organization's requirements, but we usually recommend setting a **custom path** to a **new folder** typically on the root of the primary drive *e.g.* **C:\EventPro**\
- c. Click Next.

👼 EventPro Setup	_			×
Select Installation Folder			<	Ver
This is the folder where EventPro will be installed.			X	0
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, ent "Browse". Folder:	ter it	belov	v or clic	k
C:\EventPro\		Br	owse	
Advanced Installer				
< Back Next >	>		Cano	el

7. SQL Database:

- a. Server: Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified <u>earlier</u> when installing SQL Server. It will look something like this: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS.
- b. **Authentication**: Select the radio button next to **Windows Authentication**, assuming that you selected Windows Authentication as the Authentication Mode when installing SQL Server <u>earlier</u> **72**.
- c. Click Next.

👼 EventPro Setup	×
SQL Database	
Configure SQL Co	innection
Before updatin backup of the o	g an existing database you should first make sure you have a latabase.
Server:	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS
Authentication:	Windows Authentication
	○ SQL Authentication
Username:	
Password:	
Advanced Installer —	
	< Back Next > Cancel

8. The Installer will test the connection to the database before you can proceed with the installation.

When the connection test is completed, click Install.

🕾 EventPro Setup 🗙
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro installation
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.
Advanced Installer

- 9. Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may encounter a warning, and you may need to click **Yes** or **OK** to continue the installation.
- 10. In the final window, click **Finish**.

둸 EventPro Setup		×
	Completing the EventPro Setup Wizard	
	< Back Finish Cancel	

11. The EventPro installer will automatically create a desktop **shortcut icon** pointing to the 32-bit version of EventPro.

Typically, 32-bit version of EventPro is suitable for most users. There is usually no reason to use the 64-bit version of EventPro, unless you are integrating EventPro with Outlook 64-bit.

If your installation will be integrated with Outlook 64-bit, or there are other reasons you require EventPro 64-bit, please ask your EventPro Trainer or contact EventPro Support to change the target of the desktop shortcut.

12. You can now log into EventPro for the first time, using the default credentials. See First Login to EventPro 94.

First Login to EventPro

You can log into EventPro for the first time using the default Administrator User that has been pre-set in EventPro.

- 1. Run EventPro.
- 2. In the Log On dialog, enter these default Administrator credentials:
 - a. User Name: Admin
 - b. Password: EventPro1234

(Passwords are case-sensitive.)

- 3. The **EventPro** program opens.
- Click My Details under My Workplace in the left-hand navigation pane. Your Security User edit form opens.
 You will note that the Admin user has been assigned the Administrator Security Role by default.

2 0 1 ≤ 0 0	で目間り				Admin	- Security l	Jser - EventPi									
	r Tools	Clone		Reset Add Password Edit	Note Check Spelling			Option Auto	Open Related Record Open Related Record	Refresh Au Li View	nnect Settings	Previous Record Records Na	e Next Record	Close Close		^
 My Workplace ✓ Events □ Lodging □ CRM/Sales ○ Communications 	User Name:* User Code:* Change Password O Inactive Font Color: Back Color: Api Key:	A In First Logon	dmin Black UghtGray				*	Open Defau Close Exit E Previe Edit F Wizar Defau Defau	an Data of the Joint of In Existing Tab (faster): In Existing Tab (faster): Report Preview When Prin mail Recipient Selection On ew Row Line Count: orm Style: d Form Style: d Form Style: dt Task Time From: it Task Time To: eacy Skins	nted	Non Modal Pop Default 3:00 AM 9:00 AM	pup			5 ÷	•
 Tasks Finance Reports Mail Merge Import/Export Dashboards 	Security Roles	鐾 User Groups I▼ 급 II		is 🕘 Trace Lo	g										A	
211 🕍 •••	Memory Usage: 177Mi	B Version 19	12													

- 5. One of the first things you will want to do is change the **Password** for the Admin User, since it is the EventPro default that many people will know.
 - a. In the navigation ribbon above your Security User details, click the **Change My Password** button.



b. The Change Password dialog appears. Enter the Old Password (EventPro1234). Enter and confirm your New Password.

REMEMBER THIS PASSWORD!

<u></u> 0 ≞ ≃ e e) 😋 📕 😤 🤊 🔹 Admin - Security User - EventPro — 🗆 🗙
Home Viev	N Tools
New Clone Save S	Save and New Save and Concel Save and Concel Change My Reset Add Note Check Delete Generate Clear Apl Key Apl Key Open Related Record Find Previous Next Record Cooe Save Save Edit Record Edit Open Related Record View Records Navigation Close
My Workplace <	Definition - Security User X
 ▲ My Details ▲ Task List ▲ Task Calendar 	Options Regional Settings Messages EPConnect Settings User Type: Concurrent Auto Expand Navigation ✓ Account:* ✓ Change Password — — X User Name:* Admin To change your password, please enter your old and new passwords in the text fields None —
 ☆ My Workplace ✓ Events ⇒ Lodging ➡ CRM/Sales , Communications ♡ Tasks 	Change Password On First Logon Inactive Font Color: Back Color: Old Password: New Password: Confirm Pa
 Finance Reports Mail Merge Import/Export Dashboards 	Security Roles User Groups Image: Image
¥il 🕍 •••	
User: Admin Client ID: 000000	Memory Usage: 177MB Version: 19,1.2

- c. Click OK.
- 6. You can make other changes to your Admin account as required.

If required, review Security Setup > Users > Create New User in the EventPro User Manual.

7. Installation is complete and EventPro is now ready to use.

Network Install: Windows Authentication

- This type of EventPro network installation requires knowledge of **SQL Server and Active Directory**. Your organization's EventPro installation should be done by an **IT Specialist** who has sufficient **technical knowledge** and is familiar with your organization's computer network.
- If you do not have in-house IT to assist you with EventPro installation, the instructions below will guide you through the general process, but if you have any doubts about how to proceed, please contact <u>EventPro Support</u>.
- These instructions only cover one standard set of options that typically work under normal circumstances. For more options, you will require assistance from an IT specialist who is familiar with your organization's network.
- Note that these instructions describe the installation of the base EventPro application. You may have purchased
 additional modules that also require installation. Unless otherwise advised, you should download all of the software
 components available to you, and consult with your Support or Training Specialist for assistance with installation.
- Installation Instructions:
 - 1. <u>Create Active Directory Groups</u>
 - 2. Install SQL Server 105
 - 3. Configure SQL Server
 - 4. Download EventPro Components 112
 - 5. Install Data Updater 113
 - 6. <u>Create New Client Database 115</u>

- 7. Restore Existing Database over New 118
- 8. Give Database Rights to Users 125
- 9. Install EventPro to Server 135
- 10. Share Installation Folder 141
- 11. Install EventPro to Workstations 147
- 12. Admin First Login to EventPro 153
- 13. User First Login to EventPro 160
- In this sample installation process, we follow a particular sequence of steps to prepare your EventPro database. We run
 the EventPro Database Utility Wizard to create two databases: EventProMaster, a required database that controls
 program licensing, and a named database, typically called EventProData, which is initially blank. This new, blank
 EventProData database is essentially just a "placeholder" database. You have most likely received and saved a backup
 of an existing, prepared database from your EventPro Training or Support Specialist. We will restore that existing,
 prepared EventPro database backup over the blank "placeholder" database, so that EventProData will then contain your
 existing information. Installing EventPro Software will occur later in the process.
- Note that there is another slightly different sequence of steps that you can follow after installing the Data Updater. You can consult with your IT department and/or EventPro Support or Training Specialist to determine which sequence to follow. In this alternate process, after installing the Data Updater, you first restore the backup of the existing, prepared EventPro database, typically naming it EventProData. You then install EventPro Software to add the EventProMaster database, although you do not yet run the EventPro program. You then run the Database Utility Wizard to link the client database to the EventProMaster database ("Create Master Database Client ID"). There will then be several other steps to complete before running EventPro. For more details about this process, see <u>Alternate Database Restore</u> <u>Process</u> [280].

Create Active Directory Groups

In Active Directory, you need to create User Security Groups, to which you will later assign permissions on the SQL Server.

1. Log on to the **Domain Controller**, and go to **Server Manager**.



2. In Server Manager, select Local Server from the left-hand panel.

Recycle Bin				
	B	Serve	er Manager	_ D X
	Server Ma	anager • Local Ser	Ver 🛛 🕄 📔 Manage Tools	: View Help
	Dashboard	PROPERTIES For WINSRVR2012		TASKS 👻
	Local Server			
	All Servers	Computer name	WINSRVR2012	Last installed u
	AD DS	Domain	MyVMD.local	Windows Upda Last checked fi
	-			Last checked in
=	B DNS			-43
	File and Storage Services	Windows Firewall	Domain: On	Windows Error
		Remote management	Enabled Disabled	Customer Expe IE Enhanced Se
		Remote Desktop NIC Teaming	Disabled	Time zone
		Ethernet	192.168.56.50, IPv6 enabled	Product ID
		Operating system version Hardware information	Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Datacenter Evaluation innotek GmbH VirtualBox	Processors Installed mem Total disk spac
		EVENTS		
		All events 37 total		TASKS 💌
		Filter	◄ (ii) ◄ (iii) Q	
		Server Name ID Se	verity Source	Log V
	2		R 8	ENG 12:19 PM US 2015-11-03

3. From the Tasks drop-down next to the server PROPERTIES, select Active Directory Users and Computers.

Recycle Bin		Sen	ver Manager	
		anager • Local Sei		🕑 🏴 Manage Tools View Help
	Dashboard	For WINSRVR2012		TASKS 🔻
	Local Server			Shut Down Local Server
	All Servers	Computer name Domain	WINSRVR2012 MyVMD.local	Windows PowerShell Computer Management
	B DNS ■ File and Storage Services ▷	Windows Firewall Remote management Remote Desktop NIC Teaming Ethernet	Domain: On Enabled Disabled Disabled 192.168.56.50, IPv6 e	Active Directory Administrative Center Active Directory Domains and Trusts Active Directory Module for Windows PowerShell Active Directory Sites and Services Active Directory Users and Computers ADSI Edit Dcdiag.exe DNS Manager
		Operating system version Hardware information	Microsoft Windows S innotek GmbH Virtua	Dsacls.exe Dsdbutil.exe Dsmgmt.exe Gpfixup.exe
		<	ш	Ldp.exe
		EVENTS All events 37 total	▼ (ii)	Netdom.exe Nitest.exe Ntdsutil.exe Repadmin.exe W32tm.exe
		Server Name ID S	everity Source	Refresh
	2			ENG 12:22 PM B 🖓 🕼 US 2015-11-03

4. The Active Directory Users and Computers are displayed.

In the left panel, ensure that you have selected the correct domain, and click on the Users folder.

e (Active Directory Users and Computers									
	File Action View Help ← → 2									
	← ➡ 🖄 🖬 🔏 🗎 🗮 🧟									
	 Active Directory Users and Computers [Saved Queries MyVMD.local Builtin Computers Computers Domain Controllers ForeignSecurityPrincipals Managed Service Accounts Users 	Name Administrator Allowed RODC Password Replication Group Ben Fisher Cert Publishers Denied RODC Password Replication Group Denied RODC Password Replication Group DnsJdateProxy DnsJdateProxy Domain Admins Domain Computers Domain Computers Domain Guests Domain Users Elliot P. Smith Elliot P. Smith Elliot P. Smith	Type User Security Group - Domain L User Security Group - Domain L Security Group - Global Security Group - Domain L Security Group - Global Security Group - Global User	 Members of this group are permitted to pu Members of this group that are domain con. Members in this group cannot have their pa. 						
		Enterprise Read-only Domain Controllers EP Users EventPro Administrators Forup Policy Creator Owners Guest Pearl Delany Protected Users RAS and IAS Servers	Security Group - Universal Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Global User User Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Domain L	Designated administrators of the enterprise Members of this group are Read-Only Dom EventPro Users Members in this group can modify group p Built-in account for guest access to the co Members of this group are afforded additio Servers in this group can access remote acc						
	< III >	용。Read-only Domain Controllers 용。 용。Schema Admins 용。 WinRMRemoteWMIUsers	Security Group - Global Security Group - Universal Security Group - Domain L	Members of this group are Read-Only Dom Designated administrators of the schema Members of this group can access WMI res						

5. Create a **New Group**. You can go to **Action > New > Group** in the main menu, or click the **New Group** icon above the selection grid, or right-click in the grid and select **New > Group** from the speed menu.

						Active Directory L	lsers a	nd Computers	_ _ ×	•
cle	File	Acti	on View	Help						
	<hr/>		Delegate Co	ontrol		🗟 🛛 🖬 🗏 🐍 🛅 🝸 🖉 🍇				
	Α		Find		;[Name		Туре	Description	
	▶ 🖺		New	•		Computer		User	Built-in account for administering the com	
	⊿ 🛱		All Tasks	•		Contact	Group	Security Group - Domain L	Members in this group can have their passw	•
	Þ		Refresh			Group		User		
	v b		Export List			InetOrgPerson		Security Group - Domain L	Members of this group are permitted to pu	
	Þ				-	msDS-ResourcePropertyList		Security Group - Global Security Group - Domain L	Members of this group that are domain con Members in this group cannot have their pa	
	Þ		Properties		-	msImaging-PSPs	Group	Security Group - Domain L Security Group - Domain L	DNS Administrators Group	
			Help			MSMQ Queue Alias		Security Group - Global	DNS clients who are permitted to perform d	
						Printer		Security Group - Global	Designated administrators of the domain	
						User		Security Group - Global	All workstations and servers joined to the d	
						Shared Folder		Security Group - Global	All domain controllers in the domain	
						Shared Folder		Security Group - Global	All domain guests	
						🍇 Domain Users		Security Group - Global	All domain users	
						Liliot P. Smith		User		
						Senterprise Admins		Security Group - Universal	Designated administrators of the enterprise	
						Enterprise Read-only Domain Contro	llers	Security Group - Universal	Members of this group are Read-Only Dom	
						Sep Users		Security Group - Global		
						EventPro Administrators EventPro Users		Security Group - Global	EventPro Users	
						Koroup Policy Creator Owners		Security Group - Global Security Group - Global	Members in this group can modify group p	
						L Guest		User	Built-in account for guest access to the co	
						Succession		User	bane in account for guest access to the com	
						Reprotected Users		Security Group - Global	Members of this group are afforded additio	
						RAS and IAS Servers		Security Group - Domain L	Servers in this group can access remote acc	
						🍇 Read-only Domain Controllers		Security Group - Global	Members of this group are Read-Only Dom	
						🎎 Schema Admins		Security Group - Universal	Designated administrators of the schema	
						🍇 WinRMRemoteWMIUsers_		Security Group - Domain L	Members of this group can access WMI res	
	<		Ш							
			 v item in thi	c container						
	create	s a ne	wittern in thi	s container.						
						Server Name		Severity Source	Loa	
			$\mathbf{\Sigma}$							2:32 Pl)15-11-

6. Name this group **EventPro Users**.

You can leave the Group Scope as Global, or select a different option if recommended by your IT Department.

IMPORTANT: You must set the Group Type to Security.

Click OK.

		Active Directory Users and Computers	₩
Recycle	File Action View Help		
	🗢 🔿 📶 🔏 🗐 🖾	🖻 🛛 📅 🗏 🐮 🗑 🝸 🚨 🍇	x
	Active Directory Users and Computers [Name Type Description	
	Saved Queries MyVMD.local	Administrator User Built-in account for administering the com	
	▷ Builtin	& Allowed RODC Password Replication Group Security Group - Domain L Members in this group can have their passw & Ben Fisher	
	▷ Computers	Gert Publishers Security Group - Domain L Members of this group are permitted to pu	^
	 Domain Controllers ForeignSecurityPrincipals 	🍇 Cloneable Domain Controllers Security Group - Global Members of this group that are domain con	
	Managed Service Accounts	Denied RODC Password Replication Group Security Group - Domain L Members in this group cannot have their pa New Object - Group	
	🛗 Users	ts who are permitted to perform d	≡
		🔏 👩 ed administrators of the domain	
		Create in: MyVMD.local/Users tations and servers joined to the d	
		Group name: in controllers in the domain in guests	
		Group name: in yours in users	
		8	
		Image: Big State Big State ed administrators of the enterprise Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State	
		EventPro Users of this group are Read-Only Dom	
		Roup scope Group type	
		Bondari Domain local Osecurity Users	
		Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution	
		s of this group are afforded additio	
		Ithis group can access remote acc Ithis group can access remote acc Ithis group are Read-Only Dom	
		ed administrators of the schema	
		& WinRMRemoteWMIUsers Security Group - Domain L Members of this group can access WMI res	
	< III >		
		Server Name ID Severity Source Log	<u> </u>
		ENG 12:34 I US 2015-1	

7. Create another New Group, this time called **EventPro Administrators**.

Once again, make sure that you set the **<u>Group Type</u>** to **<u>Security</u>**. Click **OK**.

		Active Directory Users a	nd Computers	_ 🗆 X	
Recycle	File Action View Help	🗟 🛛 🖬 % 🔌 🗑 🔻 🖻 🍇			
	Active Directory Users and Computers	Name Administrator Administrator Administrator Cert Bublicher Create in: MyVMD.local/Users Group name: EventPro Administrators Group name (pre-Windows 2000): EventPro Administrators Group scope O Domain local	User Security Group - Domain I	Description Built-in account for administering the com Members in this group can have their passw Members of this group are permitted to pu ers of this group that are domain con ers in this group cannot have their pa dministrators Group ients who are permitted to perform d ated administrators of the domain rkstations and servers joined to the d nain controllers in the domain main guests nain users ated administrators of the enterprise ers of this group are Read-Only Dom ers of this group can access remote acc Members of this group are afforded additio in this group can access remote acc	×
	< III >				
		Server Name ID	Severity Source	Log	~
	占 🛛 📋 🚿			Рования (12:35 Ворания) Портиния (12:35 Вортиния Портиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния Сортиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния (12:35 Вортиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния (12:35 Вортиния (12:35 Вортиния (12:35 Вортиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния (12:35 Вортиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния (12:35 Вортиния) В Портиния (12:35 Вортиния (12:35 Вор	

Now, you need to decide whether you want to **nest** the **EventPro Administrators** Security Group within the **EventPro Users** Security Group.

If you want EventPro Administrators nested within EventPro Users, you need to make the **EventPro Administrators** Security Group a **member of** the **EventPro Users** Security Group. In the **EventPro Administrators Properties**, select the **Member Of** tab, and **Add** the EventPro Users group there.
EventPro	Administrators Properties 2
General Members Memb	per Of Managed By
Member of:	
	ive Directory Domain Services Folder
EventPro Users My	VMD.local/Users
Add Remo	ove
This list displays only group in the Global Catalog, such	os from the current domain and groups maintained n as universal groups.
	2.
L	OK Cancel Apply
	····

If you don't want EventPro Administrators nested within EventPro Users, leave the Security Groups separate.

8. You can then create your **Active Directory Users**, if they do not already exist, and assign them as Members of the **EventPro User Security Group**.

The best way to create and configure Active Directory Users will vary from organization to organization, so we will not attempt to describe a general process.

9. When you are done creating Users and Groups, you can proceed to Install SQL Server 1051.

Install SQL Server

EventPro Software uses **SQL databases**, meaning you will need to install **SQL Server** to your **database server**, if it is not installed already.

You can buy an edition of SQL Server, or download the free edition, SQL Server Express, from the Microsoft website. Also, be sure to review the <u>minimum technical requirements</u> for EventPro Software.

- 1. Download the **SQL Server** installation file to your **database server** and run the installer.
- 2. Follow the installation documentation provided with your edition of SQL Server.
 - a. The instructions below will simply note the critical settings for SQL Server when used for EventPro Software.
 - b. The screenshots below demonstrate SQL Server Express, although regardless of which edition you use, the **important settings** will be the same.
 - c. There are other settings and options in the installation process that these instructions will not describe, as they will vary, depending on the IT needs of your organization. Please consult with your IT Department for further guidance on installing and configuring SQL Server.
- 3. Feature Selection:

- a. You should select the checkboxes for:
 - i. Database Engine Services
 - ii. Client Tools Connectivity
 - iii. Client Tools Backward Compatibility
- b. Depending on the edition of SQL Server you are installing, there may be a checkbox for **Management Tools**; if so, **select** that checkbox, as well.

If there isn't a Management Tools option in the edition you are installing, you can download and install **SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS)** after installing SQL Server.

- c. Whether you select the **other Feature** checkboxes is up to your IT department.
- d. The **default directories** are typically fine as they are, unless your IT department says otherwise.

🚼 SQL Server Installation Center			– – ×	
📸 SQL Server 2017 Setup			— C	- ×
Feature Selection Select the Express features to in	stall.			
License Terms Global Rules Microsoft Update Product Updates Install Setup Files Install Rules Feature Selection Feature Rules Instance Configuration Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules Installation Progress Complete	 Ooking for Reporting Service Features: Instance Features Database Engine Services SQL Server Replication Machine Learning Service R Python Full-Text and Semantic PolyBase Query Service Shared Features Client Tools Connectivity Client Tools Backwards Co Client Tools SDK SQL Client Connectivity SD LocalDB Redistributable Features	rices (In-Database) : Extractions for Search e for External Data ompatibility	The web Feature description: The configuration and operation of each insifeature of a SQL Server instance is isolated fi other SQL Server instances. SQL Server instances on operate side-by-side on the same composition of the same composition of the same composition of the same composition. Prerequisites for selected features: Already installed: Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributate Windows PowerShell 3.0 or higher Microsoft .NET Framework 4.6 Disk Space Requirements Drive C: 1195 MB required, 321866 MB availation	rom nces puter.
	Select All Unselect All Instance root directory: Shared feature directory: Shared feature directory (x86):	C:\Program Files\Micr C:\Program Files\Micr C:\Program Files (x86)		•••
			< Back Next > C	ancel .:

4. Instance Configuration:

- a. Select the radio button next to "Named Instance".
- b. You can leave the **Named Instance** and **Instance ID** as **SQLEXPRESS**, unless there is another name you prefer to use.

c. The **Installed Instances** grid at the bottom of this page would display any instances already installed. If there is already an installed instance, check with your IT Department whether you should use that instance.

🚼 SQL Server Installation Center				_		×	
📸 SQL Server 2017 Setup					—		×
Instance Configuration Specify the name and instance		QL Server. Instance ID bea	comes part of the instal	llation path.			
License Terms Global Rules Microsoft Update	 Default instance Named instance: 	SQLEXPRESS					
Product Updates Install Setup Files Install Rules Feature Selection	Instance ID:	SQLEXPRESS					
Feature Rules Instance Configuration Server Configuration	SQL Server directory: Installed instances:	C:\Program Files\Micros	soft SQL Server\MSSQL	14.SQLEXPRESS			
Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules Installation Progress Complete	Instance Name	Instance ID	Features	Edition	V	ersion	
			< 6	Back Next	>	Cance	ł .

5. Server Configuration:

- a. The Startup Type for both SQL Server Database Engine and SQL Server Browser must be set to Automatic.
- b. If not already done, switch the SQL Server Browser Start Type to Automatic.

SQL Server 2017 Setup				- 0	×
Server Configuration	1				
Specify the service accounts	and collation configuration.				
icense Terms	Service Accounts Collation				
lobal Rules 1icrosoft Update	Microsoft recommends that you	use a separate account for each SQL Serve	er service.		
roduct Updates	Service	Account Name	Password	Startup Type	
stall Setup Files	SQL Server Database Engine	NT Service\MSSQL\$SQLEXPRESS		Automatic	~
istall Rules	SQL Server Browser	NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE		Automatic	~
eature Selection	Grant Darform Volume Mainte	nanca Task privilaga ta SOL Sancar Databa	en Engina Sanvica	Automatic Disabled	
eature Rules Istance Configuration		mance Task privilege to SQL Server Databa file initialization by avoiding zeroing of da	-	Manual	_
atabase Engine Configuration	Click here for details				
atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules istallation Progress omplete					

6. Database Engine Configuration:

- a. Under the **Account Provisioning** tab, indicate which **Authentication Mode** the administrator will use to access the Database Engine: **Windows Authentication** or **Mixed Mode** (SQL Server Authentication and Windows Authentication).
 - i. Windows Authentication: You will connect to SQL Server using Windows Authentication.
 - ii. **Mixed Mode** (SQL Server Authentication and Windows Authentication): You will connect to SQL Server using Windows Authentication or SQL Server Authentication.

If you select **Mixed Mode** here, you need to enter a **Password** for the **SQL Server system administrator** (**sa**) account. When you later connect to SQL Server, if you choose to use SQL Server Authentication, you will need these sa credentials.

b. Also, under the Specify SQL Sever Administrators grid, click the Add Current User button.

SQL Server 2017 Setup		- 🗆 X
Database Engine Cor	figuration	
Specify Database Engine aut	hentication security mode, administrators, data directories and TempDB settings.	
icense Terms Iobal Rules	Server Configuration Data Directories TempDB User Instances FILESTREAM	
ficrosoft Update	Specify the authentication mode and administrators for the Database Engine.	
roduct Updates	Authentication Mode	
nstall Setup Files	Windows authentication mode	
nstall Rules eature Selection	\bigcirc Mixed Mode (SQL Server authentication and Windows authentication)	
eature Rules	Specify the password for the SQL Server system administrator (sa) account.	
stance Configuration	Enter password:	
erver Configuration	Confirm password:	
atabase Engine Configuration		
eature Configuration Rules Installation Progress	Specify SQL Server administrators	
complete	PSI\Sample (Sample)	SQL Server administrators have unrestricted access to the Database Engine.
	Add Current User Add Remove	
		ack Next > Cancel

- 7. Complete the rest of the installation process as recommended by your IT Department.
- 8. As noted above, if there isn't a **Management Tools** option in the edition you are installing, you can download and install **SQL Server Management Studio** (SSMS) after installing SQL Server.

There may be a prompt to **Install SSMS** at the end of the SQL Server Installer, or you can download **SQL Server Management Studio** (SSMS) from the Microsoft website.

- 9. It is recommended that you **restart** your computer once SQL Server is installed. If you install SQL Server Management Studio separately, you will be prompted to restart your computer at the end of the installation process.
- 10. You can then proceed to Configure SQL Server 109.

Configure SQL Server

- 1. After restarting the computer, open the Start menu, and run SQL Server Configuration Manager.
- 2. The SQL Server Configuration Manager opens.
 - a. In the left-hand panel, go to **SQL Server Network Configuration > Protocols for SQLEXPRESS** (or whatever you named this SQL Server Instance <u>earlier</u> 106).
 - b. In the right-hand selection grid, you need to enable both TCP/IP and Named Pipes.
 - c. Right-click **TCP/IP** and select **Enable**.



d. The **Warning** dialog informs you that changes will not take effect until the service is restarted, which we will do next.

Sql Server Configuration Manager				_	\times
File Action View Help					
🗢 🔿 🚈 🖾 🗟					
 SQL Server Configuration Manager SQL Server Services SQL Server Network Configurati SQL Native Client 11.0 Configurati Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configurati Protocols for SQLEXPRESS SQL Native Client 11.0 Configurati Client Protocols Aliases Aliases 	on (32bit) ation (32bit) on Warning Any change	Protocol Name Shared Memory Named Pipes TCP/IP	Status Enabled Enabled Disabled wever, they will not take id restarted.	×	

- e. Click **OK**, and you will see that **TCP/IP** is now **Enabled**.
- f. If necessary, repeat the process with **Named Pipes**. Right-click **Named Pipes** and select **Enable**. Click **OK** in the **Warning** dialog that follows.

g. Now, both TCP/IP and Named Pipes should be Enabled.

If applicable, you may also want to check the Protocols under SQL Native Client Configuration and SQL Native Client Configuration (32bit) to ensure that **TCP/IP** and **Named Pipes** are **Enabled** there, as well.

Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager (Local) SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) SQL Server Network Configuration Aliases	- - Protocol Name Status Shared Memory Enabled Fnamed Pipes Enabled TCP//P Enabled Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help ← ☆	Name Order Enable			
	SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) ♥ SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) ♥ Client Protocols ♥ Aliases ♥ SQL Server Network Configuration ■ Protocols for SQLEXPRESS ♥ SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration ■ Client Protocols ■ Aliases	3 Shared Memory 1 Enable 3 TCP/IP 2 TCP/IP 2 TOP/IP 3 Enable 3 Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help Image: Provide the service of the services Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help Image: Provide the service Image: Provide the service	d d Name	Order	- C X
		SQL Server Services I SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) QL Client Protocols QL SQL Server Network Configuration Protocols for SQLEXPRESS SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration QL Client Protocols QL Aliases Aliases	उँ Shared Memory उ TCP/IP उ Named Pipes	1 2 3	Enabled Enabled Enabled
			<		>

3. In the left-hand panel, go to SQL Server Configuration Manager (local) > SQL Server Services.

In the selection grid to the right, select **SQL Server (SQLEXPRESS)** and click the **Restart** button **(e)** above. The service will stop and restart.

🚟 Sql Server Configuration Manager					-	
File Action View Help						
= 🔷 🖄 🗟 📓 🕑 🔍 💿 📀						
SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) Restar	t service	State	Start Mode	Log On As	Process ID	Service Type
 SQL Server Services SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configuration Protocols for SQLEXPRESS SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration Client Protocols Aliases 	SQL Server (SQLEXPRESS) SQL Server Agent (SQLEXPRESS) SQL Server Browser	Running Stopped Running	Automatic Other (Boot, Sys Automatic	NT Service\MSSQLESSQLESSQLESS NT AUTHORITY\NETWORKSERVICE NT AUTHORITY\LOCALSERVICE	2652 0 4732	SQL Server SQL Agent
	٢					

4. Check to ensure that the **SQL Server Browser** is **Running**. If it is not, you can try to start it by clicking the **Start** button above.

This may not work, however, as there could be other reasons that the SQL Server Browser is not running. For example, you may need to go to the **Services** area to manually enable it there.

If you run into any issues here or any other part of SQL Server Configuration, please contact Support for assistance.

- 5. You can close the SQL Server Configuration Manager window.
- 6. Next, proceed to **Download EventPro Components** 112.

Download EventPro Components

- 1. Log on to the **Application Server** as the **Domain Administrator**.
- 2. Proceed to the **EventPro website** and login to the **Client Login area** with your 6-digit license **User ID**.
- 3. Go to the **Downloads** area.

	× +					- 0
) → C' 🏠	i myaccount.eventpro.net/Down	loads/	•	•• 🛡 🏠 🔍 Sea	arch	⊻ III\ 🗉
	_					🔒 Logou
Profit		Event Pro	sevelopers of	PMX pert'		000000
Established in 198	5					000000
🏠 Home	🥻 My Account 🛛 👗 Download	🜞 What's Nev	N	🚖 Upload File	? Manual	🔀 My Preferences
🛓 Download	ls					
se this link to access	your cloud portal: Cloud Login					
you need the Citrix V	Vorkspace app: Click here					
eview/Accept the	e EventPro Software Program Lic	ense Agreement	and u	ownioad your lic	enseu applicatio	ons.
You must accept the bir	nding License Agreement before downloading.					
	nding License Agreement before downloading. ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Cor	porate Inc. with Client ID (000000 an	d I accept the EventPro So	oftware Program License	Agreement
		porate Inc. with Client ID (000000 an	d I accept the EventPro So	oftware Program License	Agreement
I am authorized to acce		·	000000 an	d I accept the EventPro So	oftware Program License	Agreement
I am authorized to acce	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Cor	·	000000 an	d I accept the EventPro So Date	oftware Program License Description	: Agreement
I am authorized to acco	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Corpreview the license agreement. Get Licen	se Agreement	000000 an 16,187KB	·		: Agreement
I am authorized to acco	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Corp review the license agreement. Get Licen File Name	nse Agreement Size 14	16,187KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM	Description	
I am authorized to accelease download and Click Download file	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	nse Agreement Size 14 14	46,187KB 13,575KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM	Description *Required* EventPro Con	
I am authorized to accelease download and Click Download file Download file	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	se Agreement Size 14 14	46,187KB 43,575KB 15,107KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM	Description *Required* EventPro Con	nnect Setup ualAssistant Setup
I am authorized to accelease download and Click Download file Download file Download file	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	se Agreement Size 14 14 14 11 12	46, 187KB 13, 575KB 15, 107KB 26, 774KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM	Description *Required* EventPro Coi EventPro Api	nnect Setup ualAssistant Setup
I am authorized to accel Lease download and Click Download file Downlo	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	se Agreement Size 14 14 14 11 12	16, 187KB 13, 575KB 15, 107KB 26, 774KB 13, 977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:58 PM	Description Required* EventPro Coi EventPro Virt EventPro Api License Upda	nnect Setup ualAssistant Setup
I am authorized to accel Accel Click Download file Download file	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	se Agreement Size 14 14 14 11 12	16, 187KB 13, 575KB 15, 107KB 26, 774KB 13, 977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:58 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM	Description Required* EventPro Coi EventPro Virt EventPro Api License Upda	nnect Setup ualAssistant Setup iter/Database Tool
I am authorized to accel Accel Click Download file Download file	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	se Agreement Size 14 14 14 11 12	16, 187KB 13, 575KB 15, 107KB 26, 774KB 13, 977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:58 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM	Description Required* EventPro Coi EventPro Virt EventPro Api License Upda	nnect Setup ualAssistant Setup iter/Database Tool
I am authorized to accel Accel Click Download file Download file	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	se Agreement Size 14 14 14 11 12	16, 187KB 13, 575KB 15, 107KB 26, 774KB 13, 977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM 29-Apr-2019 11:54 AM	Description *Required* EventPro Coi EventPro Api License Upda Required: Yo	nnect Setup ualAssistant Setup iter/Database Tool ur license file
I am authorized to accel Accel Click Download file Download file	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	se Agreement Size 14 14 14 11 12	16, 187KB 13, 575KB 15, 107KB 26, 774KB 13, 977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:58 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM	Description •Required* EventPro Con EventPro Api License Upda Required: Yo OFITSSyse overlap	nnect Setup ualAssistant Setup iter/Database Tool
I am authorized to accel Accel Click Download file Download file	ept Software License Agreements on behalf of Correview the license agreement. Get Licen File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	se Agreement Size 14 14 14 11 12	16, 187KB 13, 575KB 15, 107KB 26, 774KB 13, 977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM 29-Apr-2019 11:54 AM	Description *Required* EventPro Coi EventPro Api License Upda Required: Yo	nnect Setup ualAssistant Setup iter/Database Tool ur license file

- 4. If you haven't already, download all of the EventPro components that you see in the Downloads grid.
 - a. The components you see in your **Downloads** grid represent the EventPro application and modules that you have purchased, so your screen may look different than the example screenshot.
 - b. The installation instructions below will describe the main components required for the core EventPro program: EventPro (EventPro.Win.Setup.exe), EventPro License Updater/Database Tool (EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.exe), and EventPro Licence (Licence.ini).

However, depending on your purchase, you may have additional components to download.

Download all components that you see, and if you have any questions about installing additional components or modules, contact your Support or Training Specialist.

c. Note that you will need to accept the License Agreement before you can download files.

If you want to review the content of the License Agreement, click the **Get License Agreement** button to retrieve the agreement in .RTF format. This is the same License Agreement that must be agreed to during EventPro installation.

- 5. While downloading the files, take note of the folder to which you save these files so that you can later retrieve them.
- 6. Do not open or run the files yet. The instructions below will inform you when you need each file.
- 7. You will use the Data Updater .exe in the next step (Install Data Updater 113)), but you will need the EventPro License, EventPro Windows Install .exe, and other components (if applicable) later.

Install Data Updater

- 1. Navigate to the downloaded EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.exe and double-click to run it.
- 2. The installation wizard will begin. Click Next to continue.



3. Select Installation Folder: If you don't want to use the default path, you can enter a different folder path. Click Next.

b EventPro Data Updater Setup —		×
Select Installation Folder	<	2
This is the folder where EventPro Data Updater will be installed.		- Con
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, enter it b "Browse".	below or click	
Folder:		
C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro Software\DataUpdater	Browse	
dvanced Installer		
< Back Next >	Cance	1
the next window, click Install.		
EventPro Data Updater Setup		\times
		×
EventPro Data Updater Setup Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation		×
Ready to Install	×	×
Ready to Install		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any installation settings, click "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		5

You may encounter a security warning, for which you may need to click Yes or OK.

5. When the installation completes, click **Finish** in the final window.

4.



6. Next, go to Create New Client Database 115.

Create New Client Database

In most cases, an existing database will be prepared for you, containing information that has been converted from a previous database or added under the guidance of your EventPro Training & Implementation Specialist. That database will be sent to you so that you can restore it.

Before restoring the database, however, this process requires that you first **create a new database** with the EventPro Database Utility. The new database you are creating here is essentially a **placeholder**. Later, you will restore your existing database over this new "placeholder" database.

- 1. Run the **EventPro Database Utility Wizard** by selecting **EventPro Data Updater** from your **Start** Menu, or doubleclicking the **EventPro Data Updater application file** in the folder to which you installed it.
- 2. On the first page of the wizard, select Create a New Client Database, and click Next.



3. Target Database:

Enter the target database information.

EventPro	Database	Utility
LVCHUFIO	Database	ounty

Target Database

Enter the target database information.

Database Type	MS-SQL	•
Server	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	
Authentication		
User name		
Password		
Database	EventProData	•
Settings		
Client I.D.	000000	
Cloud Data		
Database Data Type	Standard	-
License File	C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro 19\EventPro\Licence.ini	

- a. Database Type: Choose MS-SQL.
- b. **Server**: Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when <u>installing SQL Server</u> [106] (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS").

It will look something like this: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS

- c. Authentication: Because Users will be using Windows Authentication to connect to SQL Server instance, leave this checkbox unselected.
- d. **Database**: **Type in** (*don't select from the drop-down*) the name of the new database you are creating, *e.g.* **EventProData**.

The Data Updater will create 2 databases:

- i. This named database (*i.e.* EventProData), over which you will later restore the existing, prepared database from your Training or Support Specialist.
- ii. An EventProMaster database to control licensing.
- e. Client I.D.: Typically, you would use your six-digit License ID for the Client I.D.
- f. Cloud Data: Leave this unselected, as you are performing a Network Install of EventPro.
- g. Database Data Type: From the drop-down list, choose Blank or Standard.

×

i. **Standard** means the database will be populated with some basic default data, namely Statuses, Titles, Communication References, Booth Types, Budget Types, Payment Types, Location Features, and Location Setup Types.

Clients typically choose **Standard**, as they find it easier than starting from a completely blank database that has no frame of reference. The pre-entered status, titles, *etc*. can easily be edited to suit your organization's terminology.

ii. **Blank** means a completely blank database, with no pre-entered data.

If you are planning to restore an existing database over this new database, it doesn't really matter which data type you select.

- h. License File: Click the ellipsis (...) and browse to your license file (Licence.ini). This is the license file you downloaded earlier 12.
- i. When you have entered all of the target database information, click Next.
- 4. The last page of the wizard will inform you that the process is complete. Click **Finish**.
- 5. Now, if you have an existing database that needs to be restored, proceed to **Restore Existing Database over New** [118]

(If you are starting from a new database - *i.e.* you do not have an existing database that was sent from your EventPro Trainer, you can skip to <u>Give Database Rights to Users</u> [125].)

Restore Existing Database over New

In most cases, an EventPro Training or Support Specialist will provide you with a **database** that has been converted from a previous database and/or filled with information that you have provided.

You need to restore that database to the SQL Server before proceeding with EventPro installation.

With this process, you will be restoring the existing database **over** the new "**placeholder**" database you just created in the previous step.

Typically, the database is sent as a .BAK file, which you can restore in SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS).

Ensure that the existing database is stored on the same machine as SQL Server.

1. Run SQL Server Management Studio.

You may have a different version of SQL Server Management Studio than that depicted below, but the functions and settings should be essentially the same.

2. In the **Connect to Server** dialog, ensure that the correct **Server name** is selected (Network Computer Name\Named Instance, *e.g.* MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS).

Select either **Windows Authentication** or **SQL Server Authentication**. If you choose SQL Server Authentication, enter the **User Name** and **Password**.

(Remember that when <u>installing SQL Server</u> 108), you chose between **Windows Authentication** and **Mixed Mode** (SQL Server and Windows Authentication), and set the password for the **sa** - SQL Server System Administrator - account.)

Click Connect.

	Query 📄 🔊 🕅 🕅 🕅	よ□ 台 フ・ぐ・ 図 ♬ 27 別 副 国 田 山 国 注 三王 - ∓×		ନ - ୦ × ସ୍ମ ନ କ ହ - ₋	×
Object Explorer Connect ▼		× + ~			
	모 토 Connect to Server		×		
		SQL Server			
	Server type:	Database Engine	~		
	Server name:	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	~		
	Authentication:	Windows Authentication	~		
	User name:	MyVMD\Administrator	~		
	Password:	Remember password			
	E	Connect Cancel Help (Options >>		

3. In the **Object Explorer** panel of **Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio**, expand the Databases so that you can see **EventProData**.

Right-click on EventProData, and select Tasks > Restore > Database.

File Edit View Pro	🗝 🔛 💾 📳 🕼 New Query	elp ■ ゐ ゐ ጪ ぬ ┃ 米 口 岛 ッ・ペ・ 図 ♬ ■ ✔ 18 回 日 89 89 副 周 囲 요 ᆿ 湾	
 □ Databases ② System Databases ③ Database S ③ EventProD ③ EventProV ④ EventProV ④ Security ④ Server Objects 			
 H feelication PolyBase H feelication Management ∑ XEvent Profiled 	Tasks Policies Facets Start PowerShell Azure Data Studio Reports Rename Delete Refresh	Detach Take Offline Bring Online Enable Encrypt Columns Data Discovery and Classification Vulnerability Assessment Shrink	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
< ∠ Ready	Properties	Back Up Restore Generate Scripts Extract Data-tier Application Deploy Database to Microsoft Azure SQL Database Export Data-tier Application Upgrade Data-tier Application Import Flat File Import Data Export Data	Database Files and Filegroups Transaction Log

- 4. The **Restore Database** window appears.
- 5. Under **Source**, select **Device**, and click the ellipsis next to the field.
 - a. The Select Backup Devices dialog appears.

<mark>.</mark>	🛃 R	estore Database - EventProDa	ta			—) X	∎ ×
File	🐼 No	backupset selected to be restore	ed.					
6 •	🔑 Ge		🗊 Script 👻 😯 Help					⊁≞ÿ
Object			Source				~	
Conne			Device:					
			Database:				\sim	
			Destination					
			Database:	EventProData			~	
÷			Restore to:			Tim	eline	
±	[🗯 Select backup devices			-	- 🗆 ×	(
+		Specify the backup media and	l its location for your restore opera	ation.			t LSN	
		Backup media type:	File		~			
		Backup media:					1	
						Add		
	Conn							
	¥₩ F [Contents		
	View							
	Progr							
							>	
							idia	
					OK Cancel	Help		
							.:: p	
🗇 Rea	dy							

b. Click the Add button. The Locate Backup File window appears.

	Database - EventProData					- 0	×	□ ×
File 🔞 No backu	pset selected to be restored.							
G Select a pa	ge 🕻	🕽 Script 👻 😯 Help						¥≞ÿ
Object & Options		Source						
Conne		O Database:					\sim	
	backup devices	Devices		-		×		
Specify th	e backup media and its locatio	n for your restore operation.				-		
Backup m	edia type: Fil	📔 Locate Backup File - MYI	DBSERVER\SQLEXPF	RESS				×
Backup m	edia:	Backup File location:	C:\PSI APPLICA	TIONS\EventPro Software\Da	C			
₹ € • • • • • • • • • • • • •	ROIT DIODEITIES	Windows Photo Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Sideb Windows Sideb Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Sol Server2017Me System Volume Info System Volume Info Windows File name: 000	ble Devices par rShell S vare ter tant dia	000000_Sample.bak	Backup Files	s(*.bak;*tm;*.	log) Cancel	~

- c. In the **Locate Backup File** window, locate the existing database that your EventPro Trainer sent to you, which should have been saved on the same machine as SQL Server, as noted above.
- d. Click **OK** in the **Locate Backup File** window, and again in the **Select Backup Devices** window to return to the **Restore Database** dialog.
- 6. Back in the **Restore Database** form, under **Destination**, the **Database** should be set to **EventProData**.

. <mark></mark> N	💀 Restore Database - EventProDat	3	-		х		×
File	🐼 No backupset selected to be restore	ł.					_ !!
8 G •	Select a page	I Script → 3 Help				ع	<u> </u>
8 ⋕ 1	 General Files Options 	Source					
Conne		O Database:			~		
		Device:]			
		Database:			~		
		Destination					
		Database: EventProData			~		
		Restore to:		Timeline			
Đ		Restore plan					
+		Backup sets to restore:					
±		Restore Name Component Type Server Database Position First LSN Las	st LSN Ch	ieckpoint L	.SN		
+							
	Connection						
	HY MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample]						
	View connection properties						
	Progress						
	One Done	<	Verify Ba	ckup Media	a		
		ОК	Cancel	Help			
🗇 Rea	dy					-	

7. Ensure that you have selected the correct Source and Destination.

<mark>.</mark>	/licrosoft SQL Server Management Stu	udio					Qu	ick Launch ((Ctrl+Q)	₽ -		x
File	💀 Restore Database - EventProDat	ta							-		×	
6 G •	🕕 Ready											- H 🖁
	Select a page	🗐 Script 🕞	😮 Hel	р								
Object Conne	🔎 Files	Source -										
= 🗟		🔿 Da	tabase:								\sim	
		De	vice:	C	:\PSI API	PLICATIONS\Even	tPro Software∖Da	ata\000000_S	ample.bak			
			Database	e: 0	00000						\sim	
		Destinatio	n —									
Ŧ		Databa	ase:	E	ventProD	ata					\sim	
Ŧ		Restor	e to:	Т	he last ba	ickup taken (Tueso	day, April 16, 2019	9 5:05:15 PM)		Timeline	·	
+ +		Restore p	lan —									
Đ		Backup	sets to res	tore:								
Ŧ			Name	Component		Server	Database	Position	First LSN		Last	
				Database	Full	SRVR\SQL02	000000	1	1670500000011	19800037	167	
	Connection											
	₩ MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample]											
	View connection properties											
	Progress					_						
	Oone Done	<							Verify	Backup Me	> edia	
🗂 Read	hv							ОК	Cancel	Hel	p .	

8. In the left **Select a Page** panel, click on **Options**.

Select the **Overwrite the Existing Database (WITH REPLACE)** checkbox. (In this situation, we want the restored, prepared database from EventPro Training/Support to overwrite the blank "placeholder" database that we created in the previous step.)

- 🛃	Microsoft SQL Server Management	Studio		Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	ρ.	- 0	x
File	💀 Restore Database - EventProDa	ta		-		×	
š G	Ready						÷
0 1	Select a page	🗊 Script 👻 😯 Help					
Obje Cor	e General Files Options		tabase (WITH REPLACE) settings (WITH KEEP_REPLICATION) stored database (WITH RESTRICTED_USE	R)			
		Recovery state:	RESTORE WITH RECOVERY			~	
		Standby file:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se	erver\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRESS\N	ISSQL\E		
L I	6	Leave the database ready to	use by rolling back uncommitted transaction	s. Additional transaction logs canr	not be restore	d.	
	C G G G	Tail-Log backup Tail-Log backup Take tail-log backup befor Leave source data (WITH NORECOV Backup file: Server connections	ore restore abase in the restoring state (FRY) C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se	erver\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRESS\M	1SSQL\E		
	Connection	Close existing connection	ns to destination database				
	YI MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample] View connection properties	Prompt Prompt before restoring e	ach backup server property controls whether full-text ind	exes are imported, rebuilt, or reset	for the restore	ed.	
	Progress						
	Done			OK Cancel	Hel	ρ	
	Ready						

- 9. Click **OK** at the bottom of the **Restore Database** dialog to begin the restore process.
- 10. When the restore is complete, you should receive a success dialog. Click OK.
- 11. You can now proceed to Give Database Rights to Users 125.

Give Database Rights to Users

1. If you are not already in SQL Server Management Studio, run it now.

🧏 Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio			Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	۹ – ۵	×
File Edit View Project Tools Window ○ - ○ ☆ + ☆ - ☆ ≅ ≅ 2 8 New 〒 ☆ - > 2 1 > > 1 > > 1 > > > 1 >		み □ 台 ク・ペ・ 図 ♬ 29 波 ഈ 過 覇 丘 国 河 13 毛 毛		, / i D - ,	
Object Explorer Connect ▼ 🚏 🎽 ▼ 🖒 →		▼ # ×			
	⊒ [₿] Connect to Server		×		
		SQL Server			
	Server type:	Database Engine	~		
	Server name:	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	~		
	Authentication:	Windows Authentication	~		
	User name:	MyVMD\Administrator	\sim		
	Password:				
		Remember password			
	Ľ	Connect Cancel Help	Options >>		
☐ Ready					

- a. In the **Connect to Server** dialog, ensure that the correct **Server name** is selected (Network Computer Name\Named Instance, *e.g.* MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS).
- b. Select either **Windows Authentication** or **SQL Server Authentication**. If you choose SQL Server Authentication, enter the **User Name** and **Password**.

(Remember that when <u>installing SQL Server</u> 108), you chose between **Windows Authentication** and **Mixed Mode** (SQL Server and Windows Authentication), and set the password for the sa - SQL Server System Administrator - account.)

- c. Click **Connect**.
- 2. In the Object Explorer panel of SQL Server Management Studio, go to Security > Logins.
- 3. Right-click the **Logins** folder and select **New Login**.

🔀 Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio	Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)
File Edit View Project Tools Window Help	
🛛 G - O 🎦 - 🖆 - 🚔 🔛 📲 🗿 New Query 🗿 🔬 🔬 🔬 🐰 古 白 ジ - ペ - 🕅	🔎 🚽 🖓 🚈 🗒
※ 박 'Ÿ - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Object Explorer	
Connect - ₩ ×₩ = ▼ C →	
😑 😸 MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS (SQL Server 14.0.1000 - PSI	
🕀 🔚 Databases	
E Security	
⊕ <mark>⊫ Logins</mark> ⊕ ≡ Server New Login	
terest Credet Filter ►	
🗄 💼 Server 🛛 Start PowerShell	
🕀 🗮 Server Ob 💦 Reports 🔶	
😥 💼 Replicatio	
Management Arrow XEvent Profiler	
< >	
□ Ready	

4. The Login - New form appears.

🛃 Mic					_		×	∎ ×
File Edi	Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help						₽miţ
Object Exp Connect		Login name: Windows authentication SQL Server authentication Password: Confirm password: Specify old password Old password: Enforce password policy Enforce password expira				Search		
+ + +	Connection	 User must change passw Mapped to certificate Mapped to asymmetric key 	vord at next login		~			
€	Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS Connection: MyVMD\Administrator Wew connection properties	Map to Credential Mapped Credentials	Credential	Provider	~	Add		
	Progress Ready	Default database: Default language:	master <default></default>		~	Remov	e	
<					ОК	Canc	el	

- 5. Select the radio button next to **Windows Authentication** to indicate that you want **Users** to connect to the SQL Server Instance using **Windows Authentication**.
- 6. You now need to search for the EventPro Security Groups that you created back in <u>Create Active Directory</u> <u>Groups</u> of .
 - a. Click the Search button next to the Login Name field. The Select User or Group window appears.
 - b. Click the Object Type button. In the Object Types window, select the Groups checkbox and click OK.

🛃 Mici	Login rich				_			×
File Edit	t Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 🕜 Hel					۶ m	.
Object Exp	/ Status	Login name: Windows auth SQL Server au				Search		
		Password: Confirm passw	rd:					
				×				
±	Select this object type:			_				
Ð			Object Ty	pes				
+	MYDBSERVER							
+ =	C Enter the object name to select (Diject Types Select the types of objects	you want to find.		×		
	Advanced		Dbject types: Dbject types: Dther objects Built-in security print Composition Dthere are an	ncipals				
	Progress							
	Ready	Default database:						
		Default language:			ОК	Cancel		
<					ОК	Cancel		
🗇 Ready						.:		

c. Back in the **Select User or Group** window, click the **Locations** button. Select the correct **Domain** in the **Locations** window, and click **OK**. This is the Domain in which you created the EventPro User Security groups.

🔀 Mici		Login - New				_		×		x
File Edit	Sel Ju	ect a page General	🖵 Script 🔻 ? Help						ه در	1 U
8 ¥ ` ¥	2	Server Roles User Mapping	Login name:				Search	h		Ŧ
Object Exp		Securables Status	Windows authentication							
Connect •			 SQL Server authentication Password: 							
+ 🗐			Confirm password:							
E ≡	5	Select User or Group		×						
.		Select this object type:								
+		User, Group, or Built-in security p	principal	Object Types						
÷		Locations			×					
± =	с	Select the location you want to	o search.							
± 🗐 + F		Location:			_	~	Add			
* 11		MYDBSERVER			Provider					
	-									
	Pro						Remo	ve		
	Alle		Г	OK Cancel	1	~				
						~				
<						ОК	Cano	cel		
C Ready										

d. Finally, enter a search term in the bottom field of the **Select User or Group** window, *e.g.* **EventPro**, and click the **Check Names** button.

🔀 Mici 🚦 Login - New				_		□ ×
File Edit Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help					6 m "
Server Roles	Login name:				Search	
Object Exp Securables	 Windows authentication 					
Connect -	SQL Server authentication					
	Password:					
	Confirm password:					
	Specify old password					
•	Old password:					
.	Enforce password policy					
	Enforce password expirati	on				
* •	User must change passwo					
Select User, Service Account	t, or Group	×		\sim		
🗄 📃 C Select this object type:				\sim		
User, Group, or Built-in securit	y principal	Object Types		\sim	Add	
From this location:			rovider			
MyVMD.local		Locations				
Enter the object name to select	t (examples):					
EventPro		Check Names				
P					Remove	
Advanced		OK Cancel		~		
Caller.	Default language:	<default></default>		~		
<				ОК	Cancel	
🗇 Ready						

e. If there are multiple matching results in the **Multiple Names Found** window, select the group(s) for which you want to assign database rights, and click **OK**. In this example, we will select the **EventPro Users** security group.

		jin - New				_		□ ×
G - 6	Selecta	eral	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help					۶œ۵
8 # 1 9		Mapping	Login name:				Search	
	Judius		Windows authentication QL Server authentication					
			Password:					
•			Confirm password:					
+		lect User, Service Accou	nt, or Group	×				
÷		elect this object type: Iser or Built-in security princ	ipal	Object Types				
÷	Fr	Multiple Names Found	1		×	1		
+	F	More than one object ma	tches the following object name: "Even	ntPro". Select		~		
÷ 🗐	Con E	an object from this list or,	to reenter the name, click Cancel.			~	Add	
+ 4	PSI Cor	Matching names:	Logon Name (pre	Windows 2000)	E-Mail Address		Add	
	PSI	🕾 EventPro Admi	nistrators EventPro Admin					
	Ψ	EventPro User	s EventPro Users					
l l	Progres						Remove	
	(\mathbf{Q})					~		
4		<			>	ок	Connel	
Ready				Oł	Cancel	UK	Cancel	

- f. Click **OK** in the **Select User or Group** form to return to **Login New**.
- 7. The Login Name will now be populated with the group you selected.
- 8. Ensure that the **Windows Authentication** radio button is selected, which you probably did earlier.
- 9. Near the bottom, you can set the **Default Database** to **EventProMaster**.

🔀 Mici 📱 Login - New				_	X	ı x
File Edit Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help					a :
Server Roles	Login name:	MyVMD\EventPro Us	ers		Search	
Object Exp 🔑 Securables	Windows authentication					
Connect •	SQL Server authentication					
🖃 🔂 PS	Password:					
• •	Confirm password:					
	Specify old password					
+ +	Old password:					
Ð	Enforce password policy	/				
E	Enforce password expiration	ation				
÷	User must change pass	word at next login				
± ≡	 Mapped to certificate 			\sim		
	 Mapped to asymmetric key 			\sim		
Server: MYDBSERVER\SOLEXPRESS	Map to Credential			~	Add	
Connection:	Mapped Credentials	Credential	Provider			
MyVMD\Administrator						
View connection propertie	<u>s</u>					
Progress					Remove	
Ready	Default database:	EventProMaster		~		
Tennet .		<default></default>		~		
	Default language:					
<				ОК	Cancel	
🗇 Ready						1

10. Next, in the Select a Page panel of the Login - New form, select the User Mapping page.

Select the Map checkboxes for the EventProData and EventProMaster databases.

You need to set the **database role membership** for each database.

a. Select **EventProMaster** in the top grid, and select the checkboxes next to **db_datareader** and **db_datawriter** below.

. <mark>.</mark>	Login - New					_		×	×
File	Select a page	Script	🕶 🕜 Help						
8 †	 Server Roles User Mapping 	Users map	Users mapped to this login:						
Object	 Securables Status 	Map	Database	User	Default Schema				
Conne	- Status		EventProData	MyVMD\EventPro Users					
			EventProMaster	MyVMD\EventPro Users					
= 🗟			master						
+			model						
=			msdb						
			tempdb						
+ + +	Connection Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS		account enabled for: EventProMaster						
÷	Connection: MyVMD\Administrator # <u>View connection properties</u>	db_ac db_ba db_da db_da db_da db_da	role membership for: EventProMaster ccessadmin ackupoperator atareader atawriter Illadmin nrydatareader nrydatareader nrydatareater						
	Progress	db_ov							
	Ready	db_se ✓ public	scurityadmin ;						
<						OK	Can	cel	

b. Next, select **EventProData** in the top grid, and select the checkboxes next to **db_datareader** and **db_datawriter** at the bottom.

	Login - New					-		×	×
File	Select a page General	Script	🕶 🕜 Help						
8 ¥ ′	 Server Roles User Mapping 	Users map	oped to this login:						Ĺ
Object	 Securables Status 	Map	Database	User	Default Schema				
Conne			EventProData	MyVMD\EventPro Users					
		\checkmark	EventProMaster	MyVMD\EventPro Users					
= 🗟			master						
ŧ			model						
			msdb						
			tempdb						
+ + +	Connection Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS		account enabled for: EventProData role membership for: EventProData						
	Connection: MyVMD\Administrator	db_ba	ccessadmin ackupoperator						
	₩ <u>View connection properties</u>	db_de							
	Progress	db_ov	vner						
	Ready	☐ db_se ✓ public	curityadmin						
<	hz.)K	Can	cel	

c. You also need to give the **db_owner** right to at least one Login group, since the **db_owner** right to **EventProData** is required for **updating** EventPro Software with new releases.

How you assign the db_owner right depends on who will be performing software updates.

- i. Some organizations want only the Administrator to update EventPro Software. In this case, you would typically have an EventPro Administrators Security Group that is separate from an EventPro Users Security Group. You would give db_owner to the EventPro Administrators Login only.
- ii. On the other hand, some organizations allow any User administrator or otherwise to update EventPro Software. In this case, you would typically create an EventPro Users Group with the EventPro Administrators nested as a sub-group within it. You would then assign db_owner to the EventPro Users Login, thereby giving the ability to update the software to all Users, regular or administrator.

To review how you set up Active Directory Groups, see Create Active Directory Groups

- 11. When you are done with the Login edit form, click OK. The Login will be added under Security > Logins.
- 12. If necessary, you can add another New Login.

Again, it depends on whether you have the EventPro Administrators Security Group set up as a separate group or nested within the **EventPro Users Security Group**. If the EventPro Administrators Security Group is separate, you now need to create a **Login** for it, repeating the steps above.

13. When you are done creating Logins in the SQL Server Management Studio, you can exit it, and proceed to Install EventPro to Server

Install EventPro to Server

Because you are performing a **Network Installation**, this installation process must first be done from the **Application Server**.

1. Navigate to the **EventPro.Win.Setup.exe** you <u>downloaded earlier</u> [112], and double-click to run it.

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may receive a warning about installing software, and you may need to click **Run** or **OK** to continue the installation.

2. The installation wizard will begin. Click Next to continue.



3. End-User License Agreement:

- a. Please read the EventPro Software Program License Agreement.
- b. Select **I ACCEPT** or **I DO NOT ACCEPT** below. If you do not accept the license agreement, you cannot continue with the installation process.
- c. Click Next to continue.

_	ement	
Please read the following	g license agreement carefully	
EventPro	Software Program	License
	Agreement	
BEFORE INSTALLI	E FOLLOWING TERMS AND NG THIS SOFTWARE. INSTALL & ACCEPTANCE OF THESE	ATION OR USE TERMS AND
	OU DO NOT AGREE WITH TH	EM, PROMPTLY
CONDITIONS. IF		EM, PROMPTLY

4. Installation Type: Choose Server Installation, and click Next.

(You can review Installation Types 67 above, if necessary.)

🐁 EventPro Setup		×
Installation Type		
Select the type of installation to perform.		
Stand Alone Installation		
 Server Installation 		
O Workstation Installation		
Advanced Installer		
	< Back Next >	Cancel

5. Installation Options: Do not select the checkbox next to Use Active Directory to log into EventPro. (That option requires the EventPro Active Directory Module, and is covered under <u>Network Install: Active Directory Integration</u> [162] .)

Click Next.

EventPro Setup Installation Options These are options for running EventPro.	×
Use Active Directory to log into EventPro. (This requires a license that supports a	
Advanced Installer	ck Next > Cancel

6. Select Installation Folder:

- a. You can use the default **Program Files** path or enter a new path for the Installation Folder.
- b. If you do enter a different folder path, take note of it, as you will need it again for the workstation installs.
- c. Click Next.

👼 EventPro Setup	_		×
Select Installation Folder		5	Ve
This is the folder where EventPro will be installed.			
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, en "Browse".	ter it b	elow or clic	k
Folder:			
C:\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro\		Browse	
Advanced Installer	>	Can	cel

7. SQL Database:

- a. Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when installing SQL Server (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS"). It will look something like this:
 MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS.
- b. Select the radio button next to **Windows Authentication**. (As you will recall from <u>above</u> [125], you set up the **SQL Server Logins** to use **Windows Authentication**.)
- c. Click Next.

둸 EventPro Setup	X
SQL Database	
Configure SQL Co	onnection
Before updatin backup of the o	g an existing database you should first make sure you have a database.
Server:	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS
Authentication:	Windows Authentication
	○ SQL Authentication
Username:	Administrator
Password:	
Advanced Installer —	
	< Back Next > Cancel

- 8. The Installer will test the connection to the database before you can proceed with the installation.
- 9. When the connection test is completed, click **Install**.

🗟 EventPro Setup X
Ready to Install
The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro installation
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.
Advanced Installer
< Back Sack Cancel

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may encounter a warning, and you may need to click **Yes** or **OK** to continue the installation.

10. In the final window, click **Finish**.



11. Now the Server installation process is complete. Before moving on to Workstation Installations, you first need to <u>Share</u> the Installation Folder [14[†]].
Share Installation Folder

On the server to which you just installed EventPro, locate the folder in which EventPro was installed. By default, it would be **C: \ProgramFiles (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro**, but you may have selected a different folder path in the <u>Select</u> Installation Folder are provided by the installation wizard.

You need to **share this Installation Folder** so that network Users installing EventPro to their workstations have **Read** and **Change** access to it.

The exact process of sharing the folder will vary, depending on the network environment in which you are working.

The instructions below provide an example, but you may have to consult the documentation for your network and operating system to determine how to share the Installation Folder from the Application Server to Workstations.

1. Right-click on the **EventPro** folder, and select **Share With > Advanced Sharing**.



The folder's Properties will appear. Initially, the Sharing tab will indicate that the folder is Not Shared.
 Click the Advanced Sharing button.



3. In the Advanced Sharing dialog, select the checkbox next to Share this Folder.

You can leave the Share Name as EventPro.

Recycle Bin	EventPro Properties General Sharing Security Previous Versions Customize Network File and Folder Sharing EventPro Not Shared Not Shared Network Path: Not Shared Share Share Advanced Sharing Set custom permissions, create multiple shares, and set other advanced sharing options. @Mdvanced Sharing ØK Cancel Ap MVDBSERVER MVDBSERVER PSI-23 VBOXSVR WINDSVE2012 PSI-23	Advanced Sharing	Le La X
	1 item 1 item selected		;:= 1
		- 🕞 🔞	ENG 12:42 PM US 2015-11-23

4. Click the Permissions button to view the Share Permissions for the EventPro folder.
 Users installing EventPro to their workstations require Read and Change permissions to this folder.
 Click OK, and OK again to return to the EventPro folder Properties.

Recycle Bin	EventPro Properties General Sharing Security Previous Versions Cus Network File and Folder Sharing EvertPro Not Shared Network Path: Not Shared Share Advanced Sharing Set custom permissions, create multiple shares, and advanced sharing options. @ Advanced Sharing Close Cancel	Advanced Sharing	Share Permissions	Software P Size
		₩ VBOXSVR ₩ WINSRVR2012 1 item 1 item selected		ENG 1:15 PM
🛨 📥 🖉			- Ro 🖫	US 2015-11-23

5. Go to the **Security** tab in **EventPro Properties**, and click the **Edit** button to open the **Permissions for EventPro** window.

	<u>∭</u> ⊃ <u></u>	EventPro Softwa			_ D X	
			re		· @	
-	File Home Share	View			_	
Recycle Bin	🗲 💿 🔻 🕇 퉬 « Local	I Disk (C:) ► Program Files (x86) ► EventPro Softwar	re ∨ Ċ	Search EventPro Sof	ftware 🔎	
	🐌 Downloads	^ Name	Date modified	Туре	Size	
	🔛 Recent places	EventPro	EventPro Propertie	es 🛛 🗙		
	I This PC		g Security Previous Versio C:\Program Files (x86)\Even			
	Downloads	Group or user r	names: LICATION PACKAGES			
	📔 Pictures 🍺 Videos	E REATO	ROWNER			
	Local Disk (C:)	Si Event Pro	Illeare (MY\/MD\ Event Pro Illea III	(me) >		
	PerfLogs	To change per	missions, click Edit.	Edit		
	Program Files Program Files (x86)	Permissions for APPLICATION		Now Deny		
	Common Files	Full control	110101025			
	EventPro Software	Modify				
	EventPro	Read & exec		✓ =		
	Internet Explorer	List folder co	intents			
	Microsoft.NET	Read Write		×		
	📗 Windows Mail		missions or advanced settings,			
	🐌 Windows NT	click Advanced	d.	Advanced		
	WindowsPowerShel					
	Users	✓				
	1 item 1 item selected		OK Car	ncel Apply	=	
						 Image: Image: Image Image: Image: Imag

6. In **Permissions for EventPro**, click the **Add** button to open the **Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups** window.

	3 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1	EventPro Software
	File Home Share View	~ 0
Recycle Bin	🕞 🍥 👻 🕇 퉬 « Local Disk (C:) 🕨 Program Files (x	86) > EventPro Software v C Search EventPro Software P
	Downloads ^ Name	Date modified Type Size
	EventPro	EventPro Properties
	🖳 This PC	General Sharing Security Previous Versions Customize
	Desktop	Object name: C:\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPr
	Downloads	Group or user names:
	₩ Music E Pictures	REFACE OWNER
	Videos	SYSTEM Security Security Object name: C\Program Files k86\\EventPro Software\EventPr
	📥 Local Disk (C:) DerfLogs	Collect name: C:\Program Hies (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPr To change permissions, click Edit. Group or user names:
	Program Files Program Files (x86)	Permissions for ALL
	Common Files	Full control
	EventPro Software	Modify & Administrators (MYVMD\Administrators) Read & execute & Users (MYVMD\Users) v
	Internet Explorer	List folder contents
	Microsoft.NET	Add Remove
	Windows NT	For special permissions or advanced sett Clerk Advanced.
	WindowsPowerShell	Read & execute
	1 item 1 item selected	Uist folder contents
		OK Cancel Apply
		OK Cancel Apply
		n n a ENG 10-21 AM
		▲ 100 1021 AM

7. In the **Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups** window, ensure that **Users** and **Groups** are selected under **Object Types**, and that the **Location** is correct (*i.e.* the Domain in which you created the EventPro User Security groups).



- х | 🛃 🚺 = | EventPro Software Home Share View v ? **Recycle Bin** (⇐) ⇐ ↑ ↓ ≪ Local Disk (C:) ► Program Files (x86) ► EventPro Software ✓ ♂ Search EventPro Software Q x Size Name **EventPro Properties** 쑦 Favorites Desktop EventPro General Sharing Security Previous Versions Custor 退 Downloads х Recent places Ob Permissions for EventPro Security 💻 This PC 膧 Desktop Object n X Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups Documents Group o 退 Downloads 🖶 ALL Select this object type Music То SR CR Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals Object Types... Pictures SYS SYS Per AP From this location Sec. Videos MyVMD.local Locatio & Eve Local Disk (C:) x Multiple Names Found Enter the object name: 🥸 CD Drive (D:) VirtualBox Guest SharedVM (\\vboxsrv) (E;) More than one object matched the name "eventpro". Select one or more names from this list, or, reenter the name. APPI ICA 📬 Network Full o Matching names Advanced... For clic Modify Logon Name (pre-Windo... E-Mail Address Description In Fol 🔼 EventPro Admir EventPro Administrators MyVN List folder contents Read 1 item 1 item selected OK ОК Cancel ENG 3:00 PM , de $\mathbf{\Sigma}$ - 😼 🖬 🕼 US 2015-11-09

Type EventPro in the field below and click Check Names.

In the **Multiple Names Found** window, select the correct Security Group(s). As noted before, you may have nested the EventPro Administrators group within the EventPro Users group, or created the two groups separately. Whichever way you chose to create your security groups, just ensure that you select the correct groups when assigning rights and permissions.

Click OK.

Click OK in the Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups window.

8. In **Permissions for EventPro**, select the relevant security group, and ensure that the **Allow** checkboxes for **Read & Execute**, **List Folder Contents**, and **Read** are selected.

Users will also require Write permissions for the installation process, in order to write to the directory.

For normal operation, Users do not require **Modify** and **Write** permissions. However, if Users do not have **Modify** and **Write** permissions, they will not be able to automatically update EventPro on their workstations; they would require assistance from an Admin User. If you want Users to be able to automatically update EventPro themselves, they require **Modify** and **Write** permissions.

Click **OK**, and **OK** again.

	<mark>⊯ ⊇ ∏</mark> = File Home Share View	EventPro Software
Recycle Bin	(€) ♥ ↑ ↓ Cocal Disk (C:) ▶ Program Files	(x86) → EventPro Software → ¢ Search EventPro Software
Recycle Bin	 	Date modified Type Size EventPro Properties EventPro Properties Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPr Group or user names: Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPr Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro SySTEM Collarge permissions, click Edit. Permissions for ALL APPLICATION PACKAGES Full control Modify Read & execute List folder contents Read Write For special permissions or advanced set click Advanced. OK
		OK Cancel Apply
		▲ 😼 🖓 🕩 US 2015-11-09

9. Now that you have shared the folder with the EventPro Users, you can proceed to <u>Install EventPro to</u> <u>Workstations</u> [147].

Install EventPro to Workstations

- 1. Login to the **Workstation** computer as the Administrator.
- 2. Navigate to the **EventPro.Win.Setup.exe** you <u>downloaded earlier</u> [112], and double-click to run it.

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may receive a warning about installing software, and you may need to click **Run** or **OK** to continue the installation.

3. The installation wizard will begin. Click **Next** to continue.



4. End-User License Agreement:

- a. Please read the EventPro Software Program License Agreement.
- b. Select **I ACCEPT** or **I DO NOT ACCEPT** below. If you do not accept the license agreement, you cannot continue with the installation process.
- c. Click Next to continue.

👼 EventPro Setup	×
End-User License Agreement	
Please read the following license agreement carefully	
	•
EventPro Software Program Lic	ense
Agreement	
READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS AND CO BEFORE INSTALLING THIS SOFTWARE. INSTALLATION	
INDICATES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TE	
CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THEM,	PROMPTLY
I accept the terms in the License Agreement	
\bigcirc I do not accept the terms in the License Agreement	
Advanced Installer	
< Back Next >	Cancel

5. Installation Type:

- a. This time, choose **Workstation Installation**.
- b. Click Next.

EventPro Setup		×
Installation Type		
Select the type of installation to perform.		
Stand Alone Installation		
O Server Installation		
 Workstation Installation 		
Advanced Installer		
	< Back Next >	Cancel

6. Installation Options:

a. Do not select the checkbox next to Use Active Directory to log into EventPro.

(That option requires the EventPro Active Directory Module, and is covered under <u>Network Install: Active</u> <u>Directory Integration</u> 1621.)

b. Click Next.



7. Select Installation Folder:

a. You can use the default **Program Files** path for the Installation Folder, or enter a different folder path, if you prefer.

b. Click Next.



8. SQL Database:

- a. Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when installing SQL Server (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS"). It will look something like this:
 MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS.
- b. Select the radio button next to **Windows Authentication**. (As you will recall from <u>above</u> 12⁵), you set up the **SQL Server Logins** to use **Windows Authentication**.)
- c. Click Next.

The Installer will test the connection to the database before you can proceed with the installation.

🐁 EventPro Setup	×
SQL Database	
Configure SQL Co	nnection
Before updating backup of the d	g an existing database you should first make sure you have a latabase.
Server:	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS
Authentication:	Windows Authentication
	O SQL Authentication
Username:	
Password:	
Advanced Installer —	
	< Back Next > Cancel

9. Select Server Path:

- a. Enter the path to the installation on the server. This is the <u>Installation Folder [138]</u> you selected during the Server Installation, and **shared** with the EventPro User Group in the <u>previous step [141]</u>.
- b. Click the **Browse** button, locate that folder on the Network, and click **Select Folder**.
- c. Click Next.

EventPro Setup		×
Select Server Path		
Enter the path to the installation on the server.		
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a "Browse".	a different folder, enter	it below or click
Server Folder:		
		Browse
Advanced Installer		
	Back Next >	Cancel

10. Ready to Install: Click Install.

👼 EventPro Setup	\times
Ready to Install	2 9
The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro installation	2
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.	
Advanced Installer	

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may encounter a warning, and you may need to click **Yes** or **OK** to continue the installation.

11. In the final window, click **Finish**.



- 12. Now the workstation installation process is complete.
- 13. Repeat this process on the other workstations in your network.
- 14. You may want to create an **EventPro shortcut** on each User's desktop so that they can easily locate and run EventPro.
- 15. When you are done installing EventPro on the Server and Workstations, proceed to <u>Admin First Login to</u> <u>EventPro</u>

Admin First Login to EventPro

Once EventPro has been installed on your network, you can log in using the **default Administrator account** that has been pre-set in EventPro.

- 1. Run EventPro.
- 2. In the Log On dialog, enter these default Administrator credentials:
 - a. User Name: Admin
 - b. Password: EventPro1234

Passwords are case-sensitive.

3. The **EventPro** program opens.

Click My Details under My Workplace in the left-hand navigation pane. Your Security User edit form opens.

You will note that this Admin user has been assigned the Administrator Security Role by default.

2 0 1 ≥ 0 0	C 目 語 つ	,				Admin -	Security L	lser - EventP	ro						—	×
	v Tools	Save and Cancel Clone	Change My Password	Reset Password	Add Note Edit	ABC Check Spelling	X Delete			Key Record	Refresh	Audit Log	Reco	ous Next Record rd Navigation	Close Close	^
My Workplace <	<i> Admin - Security U</i>	ser ×														-
🔏 My Details									C	Options Regional Settings M	essages EPC	Connect Se	ttings			
附 Task List 평 Task Calendar	User Type: Account:* User Name:* User Code:*	Concu Admir Admir	1				×	•	8	Auto Expand Navigation Auto Center Popup Windows Refresh Data On Tab Switch Open In Existing Tab (faster): Default Print Destination:		None	iew			*
🎪 My Workplace	Change Password O Inactive	n First Logon								Close Report Preview When Pri	nted					
🗶 Events	Font Color: Back Color:		Black LightGray					*	1	Exit Email Recipient Selection O Preview Row Line Count: Edit Form Style:	n Double Click	Non Moda	al Popup			5 ¢
🔄 Lodging	Api Key:									Wizard Form Style:		Default				Ŧ
RM/Sales										Default Task Time From:		8:00 AM				
○ Communications										Default Task Time To: Use Legacy Skins		9:00 AM				
 Tasks Finance 	Security Roles	_			_											
Reports		• 🗗 🚺 🔘	0 7.	•	12											 •
🕼 Mail Merge	Name Administrator															-
↓ [†] Import/Export																
Oashboards																
žil 🕍 🚥																
User: Admin Client ID: 000000	Memory Usage: 177Mi	8 Version: 19.1.2														

- 4. One of the first things you will want to do is change the **Password** for the Admin User, since it is the EventPro default that many people will know.
 - a. In the navigation ribbon above your Security User details, click the **Change My Password** button.



b. The Change Password dialog appears. Enter the Old Password (EventPro1234). Enter and confirm your New Password.

REMEMBER THIS PASSWORD!

🦰 🦉 🗎 🖉 🙆 🧕	C 目 目 ウ ・	Admin - Security User - EventPro	
Home View New Clone Save S Records Creation Ay Workplace <	v Tools v Tools v Tools v adve and New Save and Concel Save Admin - Security User x	Image My Reset Add Note Check Delete Generate Clear Change My Reset Add Note Check Delete Generate Clear Edt Edt Record Edt Open Related View Records Navigation	rd Close Close
My Details Task List Task Calendar My Workplace Kevents Lodging CRM/Sales Communications	User Type: Concu Account: " Admin User Name: " Admin User Code: " Admin Change Password On First Logon Inactive Font Color: Back Color: Api Key:	Image: Control of Contro	
 Tasks Finance Reports Mail Merge Import/Export Dashboards 	Security Roles Security Roles User Groups Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Name Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles Image: Comparison of the security Roles	Cancel	*

- c. Click OK.
- 5. You can make other changes to your Admin account as required. See **Security Setup > Users > Create New User** in the **EventPro User Manual** to review the various fields in the **Security User edit form**.
- 6. As the Administrator, there are several actions you will probably need to complete before other Users log into EventPro:
 - a. <u>Create Security Roles</u> 155
 - b. Create Users 158
 - c. Create Internal Company & Contacts 100
- 7. When you have finished the steps described above, you can allow other Users to log into EventPro. See <u>User First</u> Login to EventPro 160.

Create Security Roles

A **Security Role** allows you to define a standard set of permissions for each category of Users according to their ability to access data in EventPro.

You may find it convenient to have your Security Roles set up and defined before you create Users. That way, when you add new Users, you can simply select the applicable Security Role.

- 1. In EventPro, go to Setup > Security > Roles.
- 2. There are several different Role Types: Administrator, Default, Other, and Online.

(Review Security Setup > Roles (Security Permissions) > Create Security Roles > Role in the <u>EventPro User</u> <u>Manual</u>.)

<u>~</u> 0 ≞ ≃ C ·		Security - EventPro	- 0	×	
Home Viev	Tools			\sim	
Setup <	🛱 Security 🛛 🗙			-	
🖗 EventPro Setup	🍰 Users 🤯 Roles 🚟 User Groups	Security Owners Audit Log			
EventProConnect Setup		■ ∞ ◎ ◎ ? • ⊡ • ◎ ⊴ ₽			
🔅 Virtual Assistant Setup	Name	Role Type			
🍰 User Field Definition	Administrator	Administrator			
💞 Model Management	Catering	Other			
	Default	Default			
# Sequence Numbers	Default-Other	Other			
🛱 Security	Events Finance	Other			
	Online	Other			
	Sales	Other			
		Home Girls Role			
💁 My Workplace		Name:			
		Active Directory Groups:			
🕈 Events		Role Type: Other			
🔄 Lodging	L	Other			
	[[busers 🛱 Basic Perm Default			
CRM/Sales		Administrator			
Q 🖣 ····		Unine	Account	Lines Turne	In
lass Admin Client ID: 001000	Memory Linger 160MD Version 10.1	Name Oser Code	Account	User Type	111
	Memory Usage: 169MB Version: 19.1	Login User AUser Code	Account	User Type	
		ser: Admin			

- 3. The **Administrator Security Role** is assigned to the default EventPro Admin User. Typically, very few Users should get this Security Role, as it allows full access to the program.
- 4. If you do not create any other Security Roles, any other Users you create in EventPro will be assigned the **Default** Security Role. If all of your EventPro Users - besides Administrators - will have the same security rights in EventPro, then having just the **Default Security Role** may be sufficient.

If you haven't already, you can **adjust the Default Security Role** so that it provides the correct permissions for the EventPro Users you plan to assign to this role.

(Review Security Setup > Roles > Create Security Roles > Permissions in the EventPro User Manual.)

<u> </u>		Security - EventPro	-		×	
Home View	Tools				~	
Setup < 🔒	Security ×				-	
🐉 EventPro Setup	🖕 Users 🤯 Roles 🛛 🌺 User Groups 🏾 🍥 Se	a vity Owners				
🐉 EventProConnect Setup						
🐉 Virtual Assistant Setup	Name	A Role Type				
🍰 User Field Definition	Administrator	Administrator				
🧬 Model Management	Catering Default	Other Default				
# Sequence Numbers	○ ○ ○ C 目 目 기 ·	Default - Security Role		_		×
3 Security	Q	Default - Security Kole				
	Home					~
	🮯 Role					
	Name: Default					
	Active Directory Groups:					Ŧ
	Role Type: Default					Ŧ
	A A Denie Derministere A					
☆ My Workplace		rt Permissions 🗿 Dashboard Permissions 🗿 User Interface Permissions 🗿 Advanced Permissions				
	gr Setup/Security	📰 Financial 🗿 Venue Permissions 😃 Restrictions 💭 Communications				
🙎 Events	Security					
🔄 Lodging	Access Security: None					-
CRM/Sales	Reset Password: Deny					-
	Setup					
	Access Setup: No	e				-
User: Admin Client ID: 001000 M	Modify Setup Items: No	e				-
	Create Setup Items: No	e				Ŧ
	Delete Setup Items: No					*
	Allow Open Object on Setup Items: De	W				
	User Fields					
	Access User Field Setup: None					-
	Time Zones					
	Access Set Time Zones: Deny					
	User: Admin					

5. If one Default Security Role for all Users is not sufficient, and you want to further compartmentalize User security permissions in EventPro - for example, differentiating rights based on department or management hierarchy - you need to create **additional EventPro Security Roles** of the "**Other**" type.

You could, for example, have Security Roles called **Event Managers**, **Finance**, and **Catering**. Those Security Roles would all be of the **Role Type** "**Other**", but would have different assigned permissions, depending on the information that staff members in those roles need to access.

Additionally, there is the **Role Type "Online**", which you use to set permissions related to online activities in EPConnect. If you want a User to be able to log into EPConnect, they must be assigned an Online-type security role. If a User needs to log into both the EventPro application **and** EPConnect, the User must be assigned an Online-type role **and** another type of security role (*i.e.* Default, Other, or Administrator).

(Review Security Setup > Roles (Security Permissions) > Create Security Roles in the EventPro User Manual.)

0 ≞ ≅ € .	,	Security - Event	Pro	-	×	
Home Vie	v Tools				~	
Setup <	🔒 Security 🛛 🗙				-	
ở EventPro Setup	🌡 Users 🧭 Roles 🍇 User Groups	🕞 Security Owners 🧕 Audit Log				
ở EventProConnect Setup			6 S P			
🐉 Virtual Assistant Setup	Name		Role Type			
Source Field Definition	Administrator		Administrator			
a Model Management	Catering		Other			
	Default		Default			
# Sequence Numbers	🔶 0 0 C 🗄 🛱 🤈		Event Managers - Security Role			×
🔒 Security	Home					~
	🧐 Role					
	Name: Event Manag	gers				וור
	Active Directory Groups:					-
	Role Type: Other					-
	凝 Users 🛱 Basic Permissions 🛱	Report Permissions 🛛 🔒 Dashboard Permis	isions 📋 User Interface Permissions 📋 Advanced Permissions			
🏠 My Workplace	🐉 Setup/Security 🛛 🔩 CRM 📌 Ev	ents 📑 Financial 🐺 Venue Permission	s 😃 Restrictions 💭 Communications			
📌 Events	Main Locations Resources Lock L	evel Event Status Permissions Attendee	s Exhibitors			
🔲 Ladata a	Access Events:	lone				
Lodging		Allow Assigned Only				1
CRM/Sales		Allow Assigned Only			 	
~ ~		lone				1
Q 🕅 ····	Delete Events:	Allow Assigned Only			*	1
User: Admin Client ID: 001000	Assign Events:	lone			Ŧ	i∥L
	Allow Open Object on Event Items:	liew			*	í II
	User: Admin					

6. When you are done editing and/or creating Security Roles, you can proceed to Create Users 158.

Create Users

- 1. You can now create the Security Users to match the staff members that will be using EventPro. Review the instructions under **Security Setup > Users > Create New User** in the <u>EventPro User Manual</u>.
- 2. Make sure that you assign each User the correct **Security Role**, particularly if you created customized Security Roles in addition to the built-in Default Security Role.
- 3. Ensure that you adjust the User's **Password** so that the User can log in for the first time. In the User's edit form, you can choose one of two options: **Change Password on First Logon** or **Reset Password**.
 - a. Select the Change Password on First Logon checkbox.

The User will be able to log in the first time with just the User Name, leaving the Password blank. EventPro will then ask the User to set a new Password.

6) 🗈 🖻 😋 🕞		Sea	irity - EventPi	o						
8	Home View Tools										
etup	< 🔒 Security	×									
EventP	🥿 ତ ତ ⊂ 🗄 🛱	ካ •	PG	0 - Security U	ser						
EventP	Home									^	-
Virtual		📲 🖃 🗧 🥱			1	E	C Refresh	Find Find Previous Record	×		
/ User Fi		ive and Save and New Save and Cano Close Clone		Check Dele Spelling	te 🥥	Open Related Record	🛐 Audit Log	Previous Record O Next Record	Close		
Model I	Records Creation	Save	Edit	spening		Open Related Record	View	Records Navigation	Close		
f Sequer		5670	Luic					Records Novigation	Close		
Securit	User			Option	s Region	al Settings Messages EF	Connect Settings				
	User Type:	Named	Ť	Auto	Expand Na	vigation					
	Account:*		× - 📑	Auto	Center Pop	up Windows	\checkmark				
	User Name:*	PearlDelany		Refre	sh Data Or	1 Tab Switch					
	User Code:*	PGD		Open	In Existing	Tab (faster):	Events, Compa	nies, Contacts		-	
	Change Password On First Logor			Defau	lt Print De	stination:	🔍 Preview			-	
	Inactive			Close	Report Pre	view When Printed					
	Font Color:	Black	-	Exit E	mail Recipi	ent Selection On Double Clic	k 🗸				
	Back Color:			Previe	w Row Lin	e Count:				0 ‡	
My V		Azure	*	Edit F	orm Style:		Default			-	
Even	Api Key:			Wizar	d Form Sty	le:	Default			+	
Lven			L	Defau	lt Task Tim	e From:	8:00 AM				
Lodg					lt Task Tim		9:00 AM				
CRM				Use L	egacy Skin	5					
CRM											
Com	🎯 Security Roles 🛛 🍇 User Gro	oups 🛛 Email Accounts 🥥 Trace Log	g								
Task] O O Y· F· Ø									
1 ask	Name										-
Finar	▶ Default										
Repo											
, iteho											
Q.											

b. Click the **Reset Password** button, and assign a default **Password**.

The User will be able to log in the first time with this temporary password, and EventPro will ask the User to set a new Password.

6	0 1 ≃ C ·		Se	curity - Ev	entPro				- 0	×
	Home View	Tools								~
Set	a 🖞 🕹	Security ×								-
<i>\$</i>	🔶 0 0 C 🔳	昏り・	PGE	- Security	User					
	Home								^	
<u>ي</u>			ABC				<u>e</u>	33 Find		
					7 =			Previous Record	×	
- 3∕	New Clone Save	Save and Save and New Save and Cancel Rese Close Clone Passwo			Generate Clear Api Key Api Key	Open Related Record	Refresh Audit Log	🕑 Next Record	Close	
<i>ब</i>	Records Creation	Save	Edit		Record Edit	Open Related Record	View	Records Navigation	Close	
#	🧞 User			Opt	ions Regional Settings	Messages EPConnect S	Settings			
	User Type:	Named	.	Aut	to Expand Navigation					_
	Account:*		📀 Reset Passwo	ď			×			
	User Name:*	PearlDelany	-	Setting the	user's password will cre	eate a new password for th	e			_
	User Code:*	PGD		user autor	natically, and at the sam	e time disable the user's lo nen pass on the new pass	gin anies, contac	ts		_
	Change Password On First Lo	ogon		to the use	r, so he/she can continu re you want to do this?	e to work with the applicati	on.			
	Inactive			Are you su	re you want to do this?					
	Font Color: Back Color:	Black	Password: passw	vord					0 0	_
₫	Api Key:								-	
1					Res	set Password Cancel				-
				Det	fault Task Time To:	9:00 AI	4			
					Legacy Skins	5.00 A	"			_
.										—
\mathcal{O}	🮯 Security Roles	Groups 🖂 Email Accounts 🥥 Trace Log								
3	🕼 🔓 🖷 🖶 💾	🛐 🚳 🎯 🍞 🖪 - 🕼								
	Name									_
	Default									-
										-
User	User: Admin	,								1

4. One other optional step is attaching EventPro Users to Contacts in CRM: Create Internal Company & Contacts 160.

Create Internal Company & Contacts

1. You do not need to attach Security Users to CRM Accounts in EventPro, but you may find it useful for internal processes.

NOTE: In EventPro, a CRM Account can be either a Contact or a Company. A Contact does not need to be attached to a single Company; a Contact can be an independent Account, or be linked to multiple companies.

- 2. You can create your internal Contacts and Company, if applicable, by following these instructions:
 - a. Company/Contact Management (CRM) > Add New Company (Company Edit Form) in the <u>EventPro User</u> <u>Manual</u>.
 - b. Company/Contact Management (CRM) > Add New Contact (Contact Edit Form) in the EventPro User Manual.
- 3. Once you have Accounts set up in CRM, you can then edit each User's profile under Security Setup.
- 4. In the **Security User edit form**, use the **Account** drop-down to find and select the correct Contact or Company for the User. **Save and Close** each User's edit form when you are done.

Home	View 1	Tools												
an	< 🖨 Sea	urity ×												
	C = = *					PCD .	Security	Llear				_	o x	
		/				FGD	Security	USEI					<u> </u>	
Hor	ne												^	^
1		X		15	2	ABC	$\mathbf{\mathbf{v}}$	2			C 🚺	a Find	×	
							\sim	7				Previous Record	_	
New Clone	Save Save Clo		e and New Sav	e and Cancel	Reset Add N Password	Note Check Spelling	Delete	Generate Api Key	e Clear Api Key	Open Related Record	Refresh Audit Log	Next Record	Close	
Records Creation			Save	0112		Edit			rd Edit	Open Related Record	View	Records Navigation	Close	
			Jave			Luit						Records Navigation	Close	
🕹 User							Optio	ons Regio	nal Settings	Messages EPConnect S	Settings			_
User Type:	[Named				-	Auto	Expand Na	avigation					
Account:*	L	Delany, F	loorl C			× • 📑			pup Window	s 🗸				
		Delariy, r	rearro			^ * 🗳							_	
User Name:*		Type:	Account											
User Code:*		Find:	ep event									× Search		
-	d On First Logon	Availat	ole records:											
Inactive				1							1			
Font Color:			ype	Name	A	Position			Primary Emai		Company		0 ‡	
Back Color:		~	Company	*EP Event Ve		Office Mar	-		EPVenue@e:		*EP Ever			
Api Key:		6	-	Archer, Grah		Equipment	-			er@example.com	*EP Ever		-	
		4		Bethel, Timot		Event Mar	-		EPVenue@ex	nel@example.com	*EP Ever			
				Delany, Pear Gatzke, Shan		Client Con Event Mar			EPVenue@e:		*EP Ever			
		8		Griffon, Alicia		Office Mar	-			er@example.com		nt Venue		
		6		Howery, Zad		Finance M	-			very@example.com	*EP Ever			
Security Role	s 🎎 User Grou			Ingram, Ellen		Sales Con	-			@example.com	*EP Ever			
		8		Julliard, How		Sales Con				rd@example.com	*EP Ever			
		8		Kidwell, Tess		HR Manag	er			l@example.com	*EP Ever	nt Venue		
Name		2	-	Mallard, Sand		Catering N				rd@example.com		nt Venue		
Default		8	Contact	Osbourne, De	eanna W	Booking Co	onsultant		deanna.osbo	ourne@example.com	*EP Ever	nt Venue 💌		
,												New -		

5. When you are done assigning Accounts to Users, you can proceed to First User Login to EventPro 1001.

User First Login to EventPro

- 1. When you are done creating Users, you can distribute **User Names** (and default **Passwords**, if applicable) to the relevant members of your organization, and ask them to run EventPro on their workstations.
- 2. The **Log On** dialog appears. What the User enters for the Password depends on how you set up the User profile, *i.e.* choosing to **Change Password to First Logon** or **Reset Password**.

a. If you selected the **Change Password on First Logon** checkbox in the User's profile, the User can simply enter the **User Name** and click **OK**, leaving the password blank.

🔒 Log On		×
	Please enter your login information below. User Name: PearlDelany Password: (Passwords are case sensitive)	
	Log In Cancel	

b. If you **Reset** the Password on the User's profile, the User can enter the User Name and the temporary password that you set on the User's profile.

🔒 Log On			×
	Please enter your login in User Name: PearlDelan Password: ******** (Passwords		
		Log In Cance	1

3. Either way, the **Change Password on First Logon** dialog appears.

The User must enter and confirm a **New Password**, and click **OK**.

🕐 Change passw	rord on first logon	_		×
🔥 pa	r security reasons, you must now set your own password. F ssword in the two text fields below, and be sure not to reus fore.	Vease enter yo e a password y	ur new you used	
New Password:	**********			
Confirm Password:	**********			
		OK	Cance	

4. Once in EventPro, the User can view his/her profile by clicking **My Details** in the left navigation panel.

Installation is complete and EventPro is now ready to use.

Image: Weight of the second secon		*	PGD - Securi	ty User - E	ventPr	0				-	□ × •
New Clone Save	Save and Save and New Save Close		Add Note Check Edit	Delete	Gener Api K Re	ate Clear	Open Rela Record		Ce I	 Find Previous Record Next Record Records Navigation 	Close Close
My Workplace <	🕹 PGD - Security User 🛛 🕲										*
 A My Details Itask List Task Calendar 	User User Type: Account:* User Name:* User Code:*	Named Delany, Pearl G PearlDelany PGD				Auto Expans Auto Center Refresh Dat	Regional Settings d Navigation r Popup Windows ta On Tab Switch sting Tab (faster):	Messages	EPConnect Settin	-	•
🕎 My Workplace	Inactive					Default Print	t Destination:		Q Preview		-
🛃 Events	Font Color: Back Color: Api Key:	Black				Exit Email Re	t Preview When Print ecipient Selection On w Line Count:				0 ‡
CRM/Sales							n Style: k Time From:		Default Default 8:00 AM		*
🖉 Tasks						Default Task Use Legacy			9:00 AM		
Finance	Security Roles 👹 User G	·	-								
 Reports Mail Merge Import/Export 	Image: Point of the second	0 9 II ·									<u>b.</u>
	1000 Memory Usage: 171MB Vers	ion: 19.1.2									

Network Install: Active Directory Integration

- These instructions describe the installation of EventPro using Active Directory Integration. This type of EventPro
 network installation requires knowledge of SQL Server and Active Directory. Your organization's EventPro installation
 should be done by an IT Specialist who has sufficient technical knowledge and is familiar with your organization's
 computer network.
- If you do not have in-house IT to assist you with EventPro installation, the instructions below will guide you through the general process, but if you have any doubts about how to proceed, please contact <u>EventPro Support</u>.
- These instructions only cover one standard set of options that typically work under normal circumstances. For more options, you will require assistance from an IT specialist who is familiar with your organization's network.
- Note that these instructions describe the installation of the base EventPro application. You may have purchased
 additional modules that also require installation. Unless otherwise advised, you should download all of the software
 components available to you, and consult with your Support or Training Specialist for assistance with installation.
- Installation Instructions:
 - 1. <u>Create Active Directory Groups for Integration</u>
 - 2. Install SQL Server 175
 - 3. Configure SQL Server 179
 - 4. Download EventPro Components 182
 - 5. Install Data Updater 183
 - 6. <u>Create New Client Database</u> 185

- 7. <u>Restore Existing Database over New</u> 188
- 8. Give Database Rights to Users 195
- 9. Install EventPro to Server 208
- 10. Share Installation Folder 211
- 11. Install EventPro to Workstations 217
- 12. Admin First Login to EventPro 223
- 13. User First Login to EventPro 229
- 14. Active Directory/EventPro Sync 230
- In this sample installation process, we follow a particular sequence of steps to prepare your EventPro database. We run
 the EventPro Database Utility Wizard to create two databases: EventProMaster, a required database that controls
 program licensing, and a named database, typically called EventProData, which is initially blank. This new, blank
 EventProData database is essentially just a "placeholder" database. You have most likely received and saved a backup
 of an existing, prepared database from your EventPro Training or Support Specialist. We will restore that existing,
 prepared EventPro database backup over the blank "placeholder" database, so that EventProData will then contain your
 existing information. Installing EventPro Software will occur later in the process.
- Note that there is another slightly different sequence of steps that you can follow after installing the Data Updater. You can consult with your IT department and/or EventPro Support or Training Specialist to determine which sequence to follow. In this alternate process, after installing the Data Updater, you first restore the backup of the existing, prepared EventPro database, typically naming it EventProData. You then install EventPro Software to add the EventProMaster database, although you do not yet run the EventPro program. You then run the Database Utility Wizard to link the client database to the EventProMaster database ("Create Master Database Client ID"). There will then be several other steps to complete before running EventPro. For more details about this process, see <u>Alternate Database Restore</u> <u>Process</u> [280].

Create Active Directory Groups for Integration

In Active Directory, you will create Security Groups.

Remember that EventPro's Active Directory Integration Module allows you to map EventPro Security Roles to Active Directory Security Groups, which may influence how you want to set up your Active Directory groups. For example, you may want to create a broad User Security Group for the purpose of assigning database permissions, and nest within it multiple sub-groups based on departmental divisions for the purpose of mapping EventPro security roles. This will be covered in more detail below.

1. Log on to the **Domain Controller**, and go to **Server Manager**.



2. In Server Manager, select Local Server from the left-hand panel.

Recycle Bin			
nety ele om	b	Server Manager	_ 🗆 X
	Server Ma	anager 🕻 Local Server 🛛 🗸 🕄 🖌 Manage	Tools View Help
	Dashboard	PROPERTIES For WINSRVR2012	TASKS 👻
	Local Server		
	All Servers	Computer name WINSRVR2012 Domain MyVMD.local	Last installed u Windows Upda
	AD DS	bonnann my vindslocar	Last checked fi
	DNS		
	📑 File and Storage Services 👂	Windows Firewall Domain: On	Windows Error
		Remote management Enabled	Customer Expe
		Remote Desktop Disabled	IE Enhanced Se
		NIC Teaming Disabled Ethernet 192.168.56.50, IPv6 enabled	Time zone Product ID
		Operating system version Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Datacenter Evaluat Hardware information innotek GmbH VirtualBox	Installed mem Total disk spac
=		< 111	>
		EVENTS All events 37 total	TASKS 💌
		Filter ρ $(ii) \bullet$ $(ii) \bullet$	
		Server Name ID Severity Source	
	Σ	B	CNG 12:19 PM US 2015-11-03

3. From the Tasks drop-down next to the server PROPERTIES, select Active Directory Users and Computers.

Recycle Bin	a	Server Mana	ager	– – X
	Server M	anager 🕨 Local Server	🛛 🅄 🚩 Manage Tools	
	Dashboard	PROPERTIES For WINSRVR2012		TASKS 👻
	Local Server	Computer name WINSR	Shut Down Local Server	
	All Servers		ID.local Windows PowerShell Computer Management	
	 AD DS DNS File and Storage Services ▷ 	Operating system version Microse	ed Active Directory Module for Wir Active Directory Sites and Service Active Directory Users and Com Active Directory Users and Com ADSI Edit Dcdiag.exe DNS Manager Dsacls.exe Dsdbutil.exe	rusts ndows PowerShell ces
		K III EVENTS All events 37 total	Ek GmbH Virtua Dsmgmt.exe Gpfixup.exe Ldp.exe Netdom.exe Nltest.exe Ntdsutil.exe Repadmin.exe W32tm.exe	
		Server Name ID Severity S	Source	Duna Soo
			😼 😭 I	ENG 12:22 PM US 2015-11-03

4. The Active Directory Users and Computers are displayed.

In the left panel, ensure that you have selected the correct domain, and click on the Users folder.

(←		Active Directory Users and Computers				
	File Action View Help					
	🗢 🔿 🙍 🐺 🕼 🚺 🗶 🗐 🤕	🗟 📔 🖬 🗏 📚 🛅 🍸 💆 🍇				
	 Active Directory Users and Computers [Saved Queries MyVMD.local Builtin Computers Domain Controllers ForeignSecurityPrincipals Managed Service Accounts Users 	& Administrator	Type User Security Group - Domain L User Security Group - Domain L Security Group - Global Security Group - Domain L Security Group - Global Security Group - Global	Description Built-in account for administering the com Members in this group are permitted to pu Members of this group are permitted to pu Members of this group that are domain con. Members in this group cannot have their pa. DNS Administrators Group DNS clients who are permitted to perform d. Designated administrators of the domain All workstations and servers joined to the d All domain guests All domain users Designated administrators of the enterprise Members of this group are Read-Only Dom EventPro Users Members in this group can modify group p Built-in account for guest access to the co Members of this group are afforded additio Servers in this group are Read-Only Dom		
		& WinRMRemoteWMIUsers	Security Group - Domain L	Members of this group can access WMI res		
	< III >					

5. Create a **New Group**.

You can go to **Action > New > Group** in the main menu, or click the **New Group** icon ³ above the selection grid, or right-click in the grid and select **New > Group** from the speed menu.

File Action View Help								
	(- -		Delegate Control) 🗟 🔻 🖬 🐨 🖉 🎽			
			Find		I Name	-	Туре	Description
	⊳ 📔 ⊿ 🕌		New All Tasks	+	Computer Contact	Group	User Security Group - Domain L	Built-in account for administering the com Members in this group can have their passw
			Refresh Export List Properties Help		Group InetOrgPerson msDS-ResourcePropertyList msImaging-PSPs MSMQ Queue Alias Printer User Shared Folder & Domain Users	Group	User Security Group - Domain L Security Group - Global Security Group - Domain L Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Global	Members of this group are permitted to pu Members of this group that are domain con Members in this group cannot have their pa DNS Administrators Group DNS clients who are permitted to perform d Designated administrators of the domain All workstations and servers joined to the d All domain controllers in the domain All domain guests All domain users
					 Elliot P. Smith Enterprise Admins Enterprise Read-only Domain Contr EP Users EventPro Administrators EventPro Users Group Policy Creator Owners Guest Pearl Delany Protected Users RAS and IAS Servers Read-only Domain Controllers Schema Admins WinRMRemoteVMIUsers 	bllers	User Security Group - Universal Security Group - Universal Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Global User User Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Global Security Group - Universal Security Group - Domain L	Designated administrators of the enterprise Members of this group are Read-Only Dom EventPro Users Members in this group can modify group p Built-in account for guest access to the co Members of this group are afforded additio Servers in this group can access remote acc Members of this group are Read-Only Dom Designated administrators of the schema Members of this group can access WMI res
ſ	<		Ш	>				
	Create	s a nev	w item in this container					
					Server Name	D S	Severity Source	Loa

6. In our example, we name this group **EventPro Users**.

You can leave the Group Scope as Global, or select a different option if recommended by your IT Department.

IMPORTANT: You must set the Group Type to Security.

Click OK.

		Active Directory Users and Computers	₩
Recycle	File Action View Help		
	🗢 🔿 📶 🔏 🗐 🖾	🖻 🛛 📅 🗏 🐮 🗑 🝸 🚨 🍇	x
	Active Directory Users and Computers [Name Type Description	
	Saved Queries MyVMD.local	Administrator User Built-in account for administering the com	
	▷ Builtin	& Allowed RODC Password Replication Group Security Group - Domain L Members in this group can have their passw & Ben Fisher	
	▷ Computers	Gert Publishers Security Group - Domain L Members of this group are permitted to pu	^
	 Domain Controllers ForeignSecurityPrincipals 	🍇 Cloneable Domain Controllers Security Group - Global Members of this group that are domain con	
	Managed Service Accounts	Denied RODC Password Replication Group Security Group - Domain L Members in this group cannot have their pa New Object - Group	
	🛗 Users	ts who are permitted to perform d	≡
		🔏 👩 ed administrators of the domain	
		Create in: MyVMD.local/Users tations and servers joined to the d	
		Group name: in controllers in the domain in guests	
		Group name: in yours in users	
		8	
		Image: Big State Big State ed administrators of the enterprise Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State Image: Big State	
		EventPro Users of this group are Read-Only Dom	
		Roup scope Group type	
		Bondari Domain local Osecurity Users	
		Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution Image: Solution	
		s of this group are afforded additio	
		Ithis group can access remote acc Ithis group can access remote acc Ithis group are Read-Only Dom	
		ed administrators of the schema	
		& WinRMRemoteWMIUsers Security Group - Domain L Members of this group can access WMI res	
	< III >		
		Server Name ID Severity Source Log	<u> </u>
		ENG 12:34 I US 2015-1	

7. Create another New Group, this time called **EventPro Administrators**.

Once again, make sure that you set the **<u>Group Type</u>** to **<u>Security</u>**. Click **OK**.

	2	Active Directory Users and Computers	
Recycle	File Action View Help	📴 🛛 📆 🐮 🕼 🝸 🚨 🐮	
	 Active Directory Users and Computers [Saved Queries MyVMD.local Computers Computers Domain Controllers ForeignSecurityPrincipals Managed Service Accounts Users 	Administrator User Built-in account for administering the com Allowed RODC Password Replication Group Security Group - Domain L Members in this group can have their passw Ben Fisher User Members of this group are permitted to pu Cert Publicherr Security Group - Domain L Members of this group are permitted to pu New Object - Group X ers of this group cannot have their pa ers of this group cannot have their pa Ministrators Group Image: Group name: Group name: EventPro Administrators main controllers in the domain	
	< III >		
		Server Name ID Severity Source Log	~
	🛓 🛛 📋 🚿	ENG 12:35 PM 🕼 🕼 US 2015-11-	

8. To edit a User or Group, double-click the record in the Users selection grid.

The User or Group's **Properties** edit form will open.

When you are done making changes to the User or Group, click **OK** at the bottom of the form.

9. Now, you need to decide whether you want to **nest** the **EventPro Administrators** Security Group within the **EventPro Users** Security Group.

If you want EventPro Administrators nested within EventPro Users, you need to make the EventPro Administrators Security Group a **member of** the EventPro **Users** Security Group. In the **EventPro Administrators Properties**, select the **Member Of** tab and **Add** the EventPro Users Group.

EventF	Pro Administrators Properties 2				
General Members M	lember Of Managed By				
Member of:					
Name	Active Directory Domain Services Folder				
EventPro Users	MyVMD.local/Users				
Add	Remove				
	roups from the current domain and groups maintained				
in the Global Catalog, such as universal groups.					
	OK Cancel Apply				

If you don't want EventPro Administrators nested within EventPro Users, leave the Security Groups separate.

10. Now, if you want further compartmentalize your Security Groups for the purposes of Active Directory Integration, you can create additional Security Groups and nest them within the EventPro Users Security Group.

You could, for example, create sub-groups based on your organization's departments, such as EventPro Event Managers, EventPro Sales, EventPro Accounting, and so on. You can then add these departmental sub-groups as Members to the EventPro Users Security Group.

EventPro Users Properties ? X					
General Members Member Of	Managed By				
Members:					
Name	Active Directory Domain Services Folder				
Sector 2 Event Pro Accounting	MyVMD.local/Users				
Sector 2 Content Pro Administrators	MyVMD.local/Users				
EventPro Event Managers					
Second Pro Sales	MyVMD.local/Users				
<					
Add Remove					
	OK Cancel Apply				

The reason for nesting all of those departmental sub-groups within the EventPro User Security Group is efficiency of assigning database permissions to the SQL Server. Instead of assigning permissions to each of the multiple department-based groups, you can simply assign database permissions to the all-encompassing EventPro Users Security Group.

11. Next, you can create **Active Directory Users**, if they do not already exist, and assign them to the correct Security Group(s).

The best way to create and configure Active Directory Users will vary depending on your organization's needs, so we will not attempt to describe the entire process.

There are three important factors to remember when creating or editing these Users:

a. Under the Member Of tab of each User's Properties, ensure that you Add the appropriate Security Group.
 Remember that when using Active Directory Integration, the User's Security Group will determine which EventPro Security Role will be assigned to the User.

	r.		Server Manager	_ 🗆 X
Recy			Active Directory Users and Computers	_ 🗆 X
	C	File Action View Help		
	_		Elliot P. Smith Properties ? X	
		Active Directory Users and Computers [Remote control Remote Desktop Services Profile COM+	escription uilt-in account for administering the com
			General Address Account Profile Telephones Organization	embers in this group can have their passw
	1	Computers Domain Controllers	Member Of Dial-in Environment Sessions Member of:	embers of this group are permitted to pu
	8	ForeignSecurityPrincipals Managed Service Accounts	Name Active Directory Domain Services Folder Domain Users MyVMD Jocal/Users	embers of this group that are domain con embers in this group cannot have their pa
	Ξ.	Users	Domain Users MyVMD.Jocal/Users EventPro Users MyVMD.Jocal/Users Add Remove Primary group: Domain Users Set Primary Group There is no need to change Primary group unless you have Macintosh clients or POSIX-compliant applications. OK Cancel Apply Help	NS Administrators Group NS clients who are permitted to perform d esignated administrators of the domain I workstations and servers joined to the d I domain controllers in the domain I domain guests I domain users esignated administrators of the enterprise embers of this group are Read-Only Dom rentPro Users embers of this group can modify group p uilt-in account for guest access to the co embers of this group are afforded additio ervers in this group can access remote acc embers of this group are Read-Only Dom ervers in this group are Read-Only Dom esignated administrators of the schema
	_	4	,	embers of this group can access WMI res
E		. 2 📋 🛷		Rog 12:37 PM US 2015-11-03

b. The User's **EventPro User Name** will be created from a combination of the **domain** name and **User Logon Name** from Active Directory Users and Computer

Under the **User Properties > Account** tab, you can use either of the variations displayed there , *i.e.* userlogonname@yourdomain.local or yourdomain\userloginname.

Ī	ħ.		Server Manager	
۲ Recy	æ		Active Directory Users and Computers	_ D X
		File Action View Help Image: Active Directory Users and Computers Image: Active Directory Users and Computers Image: Active Directory Users and Computers Image: Active Directory Users and Computers Image: Active Directory Users and Computers Image: Active Directory Users and Computers Image: Active Directory Users and Computers Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory Users Image: Active Directory User	Image: Section of the section of th	escription wilt-in account for administering the com embers in this group can have their passw embers of this group that are domain com embers of this group that are domain com embers of this group that are domain com embers in this group cannot have their pa NS Administrators Group NS clients who are permitted to perform d esignated administrators of the domain I workstations and servers joined to the d I domain guests I domain guests I domain users esignated administrators of the enterprise embers of this group are Read-Only Dom rentPro Users embers in this group can modify group p wilt-in account for guest access to the co embers of this group are afforded additio rvers in this group can access remote acc embers of this group are Read-Only Dom esignated administrators of the schema embers of this group can access WMI res
				ING 12:38 PM
				US 2015-11-03

c. There are several fields in the Active Directory User Properties that will translate into EventPro: First Name, Last Name, Email Address, Address information, Telephone Number (from under the General tab), and Job Title (under certain circumstances).

	r.		Server Manager	_ 🗆 X
Recy		8	Active Directory Users and Computers	_ 🗆 X
		File Action View Help Image: Several computers Image: Several computers	Remote control Remote Desktop Services Profile COM+ Member Of Dial-in Environment Sessions General Address Account Profile Telephones Organization Image: Services Profile COM+ Display name: Elliot Initials: P Last name: Smith Smith Sestions Office: Sestions Telephone number: 123-456-7890 Other Other Web page: Other Other Help	escription wilt-in account for administering the com embers in this group can have their passw embers of this group that are domain con embers of this group that are domain con embers in this group cannot have their pa NS Administrators Group NS clients who are permitted to perform d esignated administrators of the domain I workstations and servers joined to the d I domain controllers in the domain I domain guests I domain users esignated administrators of the enterprise embers of this group are Read-Only Dom rentPro Users embers in this group can modify group p wilt-in account for guest access to the co embers of this group are afforded additio rvers in this group can access remote acc embers of this group are Read-Only Dom
		- 2 🔒 🛷		Fig 🕞 🕼 us 2015-11-03

When a User later logs into EventPro, EventPro will look for a matching Windows User Name, Active Directory ID or Email Address.

Failing to find any of those, EventPro will assume this User is new, and will create a new EventPro Security User, pulling information from the Active Directory fields mentioned above.

The **Job Title** may be the one exception; it will only translate across if there is a Default Account set in EventPro's Event System Settings. That will be covered below, when the Administrator first logs into EventPro.

12. When you are done creating Users and Groups in Active Directory, you can proceed to Install SQL Server 175].

Install SQL Server

EventPro Software uses **SQL databases**, meaning you will need to install **SQL Server** to your **database server**, if it is not installed already.

You can buy an edition of SQL Server, or download the free edition, SQL Server Express, from the Microsoft website. Also, be sure to review the <u>minimum technical requirements</u> for EventPro Software.

- 1. Download the **SQL Server** installation file to your **database server** and run the installer.
- 2. Follow the installation documentation provided with your edition of SQL Server.
 - a. The instructions below will simply note the **critical settings** for SQL Server when used for EventPro Software.
 - b. The screenshots below demonstrate **SQL Server Express**, although regardless of which edition you use, the **important settings** will be the same.

- c. There are other settings and options in the installation process that these instructions will not describe, as they will vary, depending on the IT needs of your organization. Please consult with your IT Department for further guidance on installing and configuring SQL Server.
- 3. Feature Selection:
 - a. You should select the checkboxes for:
 - i. Database Engine Services
 - ii. Client Tools Connectivity
 - iii. Client Tools Backward Compatibility
 - b. Depending on the edition of SQL Server you are installing, there may be a checkbox for **Management Tools**; if so, **select** that checkbox, as well.

If there isn't a Management Tools option in the edition you are installing, you can download and install **SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS)** after installing SQL Server.

- c. Whether you select the other Feature checkboxes is up to your IT department.
- d. The **default directories** are typically fine as they are, unless your IT department says otherwise.

📸 SQL Server Installation Center			– 🗆 X
📸 SQL Server 2017 Setup			– 🗆 ×
Feature Selection Select the Express features to in	istall.		
License Terms Global Rules Microsoft Update Product Updates Install Setup Files Install Rules Feature Selection Feature Rules Instance Configuration Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules Installation Progress Complete	 Cooking for Reporting Service Features: Instance Features Database Engine Services SQL Server Replication Machine Learning Service R Python Full-Text and Semantic PolyBase Query Service Shared Features Client Tools Connectivity Client Tools Backwards Condition Client Connectivity SU LocalDB Redistributable Features 	rices (In-Database) c Extractions for Search e for External Data ompatibility	The web Feature description: The configuration and operation of each instance feature of a SQL Server instance is isolated from other SQL Server instances. SQL Server instances can operate side-by-side on the same computer. Prerequisites for selected features: Already installed: • Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributable • Windows PowerShell 3.0 or higher • Microsoft .NET Framework 4.6 Disk Space Requirements Drive C: 1195 MB required, 321866 MB available
	Select All Unselect All		
	Instance root directory:	C:\Program Files\Micro	osoft SQL Server\
	Shared feature directory:	C:\Program Files\Micro	osoft SQL Server\
	Shared feature directory (x86):	C:\Program Files (x86)	\Microsoft SQL Server\
			< Back Next > Cancel

4. Instance Configuration:
- a. Select the radio button next to "Named Instance".
- b. You can leave the **Named Instance** and **Instance ID** as **SQLEXPRESS**, unless there is another name you prefer to use.
- c. The **Installed Instances** grid at the bottom of this page would display any instances already installed. If there is already an installed instance, check with your IT Department whether you should use that instance.

SQL Server Installation Center				—		×	×
					_		^
Instance Configuration							
Specify the name and instance	D for the instance of S	QL Server. Instance ID bec	comes part of the in	stallation path.			
License Terms	O Default instance						
Global Rules Microsoft Update	Named instance:	SQLEXPRESS					
Product Updates							
Install Setup Files Install Rules	Instance ID:	SQLEXPRESS					
Feature Selection	SOL Server directory	C:\Program Files\Micros	oft SOL Server\MSS				
Feature Rules Instance Configuration	Installed instances:	C. (Flogram Files (Micros	OT 302 381781 (1933	QL14.3QLEAPRESS			
Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration	Instance Name	Instance ID	Features	Edition	Ve	rsion	
Feature Configuration Rules							
Installation Progress Complete							
compare							
				< Back Next	t>	Cance	el

5. Server Configuration:

- a. The Startup Type for both SQL Server Database Engine and SQL Server Browser must be set to Automatic.
- b. If not already set, switch the SQL Server Browser Start Type to Automatic.

SQL Server 2017 Setup				- 0	×
Server Configuration					
Specify the service accounts a	and collation configuration.				
icense Terms	Service Accounts Collation				
lobal Rules	Microsoft recommends that you u	use a separate account for each SQL Serve	er service.		
1icrosoft Update roduct Updates	Service	Account Name	Password	Startup Type	
istall Setup Files	SQL Server Database Engine	NT Service\MSSQL\$SQLEXPRESS	rassword	Automatic	~
istall Rules	SQL Server Browser	NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE		Automatic	~
eature Selection				Automatic	
eature Rules	Grant Perform Volume Mainter	nance Task privilege to SQL Server Databa	ase Engine Service	Disabled	
1. C. C. K.				Manual	- 1
stance Configuration	This privilege enables instant f	ile initialization by avoiding zeroing of da	ta pages. This may lea	id to information	
istance Configuration	disclosure by allowing deleted	ile initialization by avoiding zeroing of da content to be accessed.	ta pages. This may lea	id to information	
erver Configuration	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	d to mornation	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration			ta pages. This may lea	io to mornation	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	a to information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules astallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	id to information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	io to information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules astallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea		
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules Istallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea		
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules Istallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	io information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules Istallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	io information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules Istallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	io information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules astallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	io to information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules astallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	io information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules astallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea		
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules astallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea	io to information	
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules astallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted		ta pages. This may lea		
erver Configuration atabase Engine Configuration eature Configuration Rules astallation Progress	disclosure by allowing deleted			xt >	

6. Database Engine Configuration:

- a. Under the **Account Provisioning** tab, indicate which **Authentication Mode** the administrator will use to access the Database Engine: **Windows Authentication** or **Mixed Mode** (SQL Server Authentication and Windows Authentication).
 - i. Windows Authentication: You intend to connect to SQL Server using Windows Authentication.
 - ii. **Mixed Mode (SQL Server Authentication and Windows Authentication)**: You intend to connect to SQL Server using Windows Authentication or SQL Server Authentication.

If you select Mixed Mode here, you need to enter a **Password** for the **SQL Server system administrator** (sa) account. If you later connect to SQL Server using SQL Server Authentication, you will need these sa credentials.

b. Also, under the Specify SQL Sever Administrators grid, click the Add Current User button.

Database Engine Co	nfiguration	
Specify Database Engine au	uthentication security mode, administrators, data directories and TempDB settings.	
icense Terms	Server Configuration Data Directories TempDB User Instances FILESTREAM	
lobal Rules licrosoft Update	Specify the authentication mode and administrators for the Database Engine.	
roduct Updates	Authentication Mode	
stall Setup Files	Windows authentication mode	
stall Rules	Mixed Mode (SQL Server authentication and Windows authentication)	
ature Selection	Specify the password for the SQL Server system administrator (sa) account.	
sture Rules		
erver Configuration	Enter password:	
atabase Engine Configuration	Confirm password:	
ature Configuration Rules	Specify SQL Server administrators	
stallation Progress	PSI\Sample (Sample) SQL	Server administrators have
omplete		estricted access to the abase Engine.
	Add Current User Add Remove	

- 7. Complete the rest of the installation process as recommended by your IT Department.
- As noted above, if there isn't a Management Tools option in the edition you are installing, you can download and install SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) after installing SQL Server. There may be a prompt to Install SSMS at the end of the SQL Server Installer, or you can download SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) from the Microsoft website.
- 9. It is recommended that you **restart** your computer once SQL Server is installed. If you install SQL Server Management Studio separately, you will be prompted to restart your computer at the end of the installation process.
- 10. You can then proceed to **<u>Configure SQL Server</u>** 179.

Configure SQL Server

- 1. After restarting the computer, open the Start menu, and go to SQL Server Configuration Manager.
- 2. The SQL Server Configuration Manager opens.
 - a. In the left-hand panel, go to **SQL Server Network Configuration > Protocols for SQLEXPRESS** (or whatever you named the SQL Server Instance <u>earlier</u> 176).
 - b. In the right-hand selection grid, you need to enable both TCP/IP and Named Pipes.
 - c. Right-click **TCP/IP** and select **Enable**.



d. The **Warning** dialog informs you that changes will not take effect until the service is restarted, which we will do next.

Sql Server Configuration Manager	_	\times			
File Action View Help					
🗢 🄿 🞽 📓 🗟 🛛					
 SQL Server Configuration Manager SQL Server Services SQL Server Network Configurati SQL Native Client 11.0 Configurati Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configurati Protocols for SQLEXPRESS SQL Native Client 11.0 Configurati 	on (32bit) ation (32bit) on	Protocol Name Shared Memory Named Pipes	Status Enabled Enabled Disabled		
Aliases	Warning Any change	s made will be saved; ho the service is stopped an	owever, they will not take nd restarted. OK	×	

- e. Click OK. You should then see that TCP/IP is Enabled.
- f. Now, if necessary, repeat the process with **Named Pipes**. Right-click **Named Pipes** and select **Enable**. Click **OK** in the **Warning** dialog that follows.

g. Both TCP/IP and Named Pipes should now be Enabled.

If applicable, you may also want to check the Protocols under SQL Native Client Configuration and SQL Native Client Configuration (32bit) to ensure that **TCP/IP** and **Named Pipes** are **Enabled** there, as well.

Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager (Local) Sql Sql Server Services Sql Sql Network Configuration (32bit) Image: Sql Server Network Configuration Image: Protocols for SQLEXPRESS Image: Sql Server Network Configuration Image: Client Protocols Image: Aliases Image: Sql Server Network Configuration Image: Client Protocols Image: Aliases Image: Aliases	- - Protocol Name Status Shared Memory Enabled TCP//P Enabled TCP//P Enabled Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) SQL Server Services SQL Server Service SQL Server Servic	Name Order Enabled STCP/IP 2 Enabled Named Pipes 3 Enabled		
	✓ SQL Server Network Configuration Protocols for SQLEXPRESS ✓ SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration ✓ Client Protocols ✓ Aliases ✓ Aliases ✓ ✓	Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager (Local) SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) Image: SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) Image: SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration Image: Protocols for SQLEXPRESS Image: SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration Image: SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration Image: SQL Server Network Configuration Image: Protocols for SQLEXPRESS Image: SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration Image: Client Protocols Image: Aliases Image: Aliases	Name C S Shared Memory 1 S TCP/IP 2 Named Pipes 3 Named Pipes 3	Enabled

3. In the left-hand panel, go to SQL Server Configuration Manager (local) > SQL Server Services.

In the selection grid to the right, select **SQL Server (SQLEXPRESS)** and click the **Restart** button **(e)** above. The service will stop and restart.

🚟 Sql Server Configuration Manager					-	
File Action View Help						
= 🔷 🖄 🗟 📓 🕑 🔍 💿 📀						
SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) Restar	t service	State	Start Mode	Log On As	Process ID	Service Type
 SQL Server Services SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configuration Protocols for SQLEXPRESS SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration Client Protocols Aliases 	SQL Server (SQLEXPRESS) SQL Server Agent (SQLEXPRESS) SQL Server Browser	Running Stopped Running	Automatic Other (Boot, Sys Automatic	NT Service\MSSQLESSQLESSQLESS NT AUTHORITY\NETWORKSERVICE NT AUTHORITY\LOCALSERVICE	2652 0 4732	SQL Server SQL Agent
	٢					

4. Check to ensure that the SQL Server Browser is Running.

If it is not, you can try to start it by clicking the **Start** button above. This may not work, however, as there could be other reasons that the SQL Server Browser is not running. For example, you may need to go to the **Services** area to manually enable it there.

If you run into any issues here or any other part of **SQL Server Configuration**, please contact **Support** for assistance.

- 5. You can close the SQL Server Configuration Manager window.
- 6. Next, proceed to **Download EventPro Components** 1821.

Download EventPro Components

- 1. Log on to the Application Server as the Domain Administrator.
- 2. Proceed to the EventPro website and login to the Client Login area with your 6-digit license User ID.
- 3. Go to the **Downloads** area.

→ C' 🏠	i myaccount.eventpro.net/	Downloads/		••• 🗵 🗘 🔍 s	earch	<u>↓</u> III\ 🗉
						🔒 Logo
Established in 198		🜔 Ever	tPro (PMX pert [*]		00000
🏠 Home	🤱 My Account 🛛 🚢 Down	ıload 🛛 🌞 Wha	at's New	🚔 Upload File	🕐 Manual	X My Preferences
Download	ls					
this link to access	your cloud portal: Cloud Login					
	Vorkspace app: Click here					
You must accept the bir	e EventPro Software Program nding License Agreement before download	ing.				
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acce	nding License Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf	ing.				
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acce	nding License Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cli				se Agreement
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acce ase download and Click Download file	nding License Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf review the license agreement. Ge File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cli et License Agreement Size	ient ID 000000 ar 146,187KB	nd I accept the EventPro Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM	Software Program Licens Description Required*	se Agreement
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acco ase download and Click Download file Download file	review the license Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf review the license agreement. Ge File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cli et License Agreement Size	ient ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB	nd I accept the EventPro Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:54 PM	Software Program Licens Description Required* EventPro Co	se Agreement onnect Setup
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acco ase download and Click Download file Download file Download file	nding License Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf review the license agreement. Ge File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cli et License Agreement Size	ient ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB	nd I accept the EventPro Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM	Software Program Licens Description Required* EventPro Co EventPro Vi	se Agreement ponnect Setup rtualAssistant Setup
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acco ase download and Click Download file Download file Download file Download file	review the license Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf review the license agreement. Ge File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1. EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cl et License Agreement Size 2.0.exe	ient ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB 126,774KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM	Software Program Licens Description Required* EventPro Co EventPro Vi EventPro A	se Agreement onnect Setup rtualAssistant Setup oi
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acco ase download and Click Download file Download file Download file Download file Download file	review the license Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf review the license agreement. Ge File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1. EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cl et License Agreement Size 2.0.exe	ient ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB 126,774KB 113,977KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:58 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM	Software Program Licens Description Required* EventPro Co EventPro Aj License Upo	se Agreement onnect Setup rtualAssistant Setup oi Jater/Database Tool
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acco ase download and Click Download file Download file Download file Download file	review the license Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf review the license agreement. Ge File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1. EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cl et License Agreement Size 2.0.exe	ient ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB 126,774KB	Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:58 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM	Software Program Licens Description Required* EventPro Co EventPro Aj License Upo	se Agreement onnect Setup rtualAssistant Setup oi
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acco ase download and Click Download file Download file Download file Download file Download file	review the license Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf review the license agreement. Ge File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1. EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cl et License Agreement Size 2.0.exe	ient ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB 126,774KB 113,977KB	nd I accept the EventPro Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM 29-Apr-2019 11:54 AM	Software Program Licen: Description Required* EventPro Cr EventPro Aj License Upo Required Yo	se Agreement onnect Setup rtualAssistant Setup oi later/Database Tool our license file
You must accept the bin I am authorized to acco ase download and Click Download file Download file Download file Download file Download file	review the license Agreement before download ept Software License Agreements on behalf review the license agreement. Ge File Name EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1. EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	ing. of Corporate Inc. with Cl et License Agreement Size 2.0.exe	ient ID 000000 ar 146,187KB 143,575KB 115,107KB 126,774KB 113,977KB	nd I accept the EventPro Date 10-May-2019 01:53 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 10-May-2019 01:57 PM 29-Apr-2019 11:54 AM	Software Program Licen: Description Required* EventPro Cr EventPro Aj License Upo Required Yo	se Agreement onnect Setup rtualAssistant Setup oi Jater/Database Tool

- 4. If you haven't already, download all of the EventPro components that you see in the Downloads grid.
 - a. The components you see in your **Downloads** grid represent the EventPro application and modules that you have purchased, so your screen may look different than the example screenshot.

 b. The installation instructions below will describe the main components required for the core EventPro program: EventPro (EventPro.Win.Setup.exe), EventPro License Updater/Database Tool (EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.exe), and EventPro Licence (Licence.ini).

However, depending on your purchase, you may have additional components to download.

Download all components that you see, and if you have any questions about installing additional components or modules, contact your Support or Training Specialist.

c. Note that you will need to accept the License Agreement before you can download files.

If you want to review the content of the License Agreement, click the **Get License Agreement** button to retrieve the agreement in .RTF format. This is the same License Agreement that must be agreed to during EventPro installation.

5. While downloading the files, take note of the folder to which you save these files so that you can later retrieve them.

Do not open or run the files yet. The instructions below will inform you when you need each file.

6. You will use the Data Updater Install in the next step (Install Data Updater (183)), but you will need the EventPro License, EventPro Windows Install, and other components (if applicable) later.

Install Data Updater

- 1. Navigate to the downloaded EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.exe and double-click to run it.
- 2. The installation wizard will begin. Click Next to continue.

n EventPro Data Updater Setu	nb X
29	Welcome to the EventPro Data Updater Setup Wizard
	The Setup Wizard will install EventPro Data Updater on your computer. Click "Next" to continue or "Cancel" to exit the Setup Wizard.
	< Back Next > Cancel

3. Select Installation Folder:

If you don't want to use the default path, you can enter a different folder path.

Click Next.

b EventPro Data Updater Setup —		×
Select Installation Folder	<	2
This is the folder where EventPro Data Updater will be installed.		- Con
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, enter it b "Browse".	below or click	
Folder:		
C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro Software\DataUpdater	Browse	
dvanced Installer		
< Back Next >	Cance	1
the next window, click Install.		
EventPro Data Updater Setup		\times
		×
EventPro Data Updater Setup Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation		×
Ready to Install	×	×
Ready to Install		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		×
The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any installation settings, click "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.		×
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any		5

You may encounter a security warning, for which you may need to click Yes or OK.

5. When the installation completes, click **Finish** in the final window.

4.



6. Next, go to <u>Create New Client Database</u> 1851.

Create New Client Database

In most cases, an existing database will be prepared for you, containing information that has been converted from a previous database or added under the guidance of your EventPro Training & Implementation Specialist. That database will be sent to you so that you can restore it.

Before restoring the database, however, this process requires that you first **create a new database** with the EventPro Database Utility. The new database you are creating here is essentially a **placeholder**. Later, you will restore your existing database over this new "placeholder" database.

- 1. Run the **EventPro Database Utility Wizard** by selecting **EventPro Data Updater** from your **Start** Menu, or doubleclicking the **EventPro Data Updater application file** in the folder to which you installed it.
- 2. On the first page of the wizard, select Create a New Client Database, and click Next.



3. Target Database:

Enter the target database information.

n	B	11111111
EventPro	Database	Utility

Target Database

Enter the target database information.

Database Type	MS-SQL	•
Server	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	
Authentication		
User name		
Password		
Database	EventProData	•
Settings		
Client I.D.	000000	
Cloud Data		
Database Data Type	Standard	-
License File	C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro 19\EventPro\Licence.ini	

- a. Database Type: Choose MS-SQL.
- b. Server: Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when <u>installing SQL Server [175]</u> (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS").

It will look something like this: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS

- c. **Authentication**: Because Users will be connecting to the SQL Server Instance using **Windows Authentication**, leave this checkbox unselected.
- d. **Database**: **Type** in (*don't select from the drop-down*) the name of the new database you are creating, *e.g.* **EventProData**.

The Data Updater will create 2 databases:

- i. This named database (*i.e.* **EventProData**), over which you will later restore the existing, prepared database from your Training or Support Specialist.
- ii. An EventProMaster database to control licensing.
- e. Client I.D.: Typically, you would use your six-digit License ID for the Client I.D.
- f. Cloud Data: Leave this unselected, as you are performing a Network Install of EventPro.
- g. Database Data Type: From the drop-down list, choose Blank or Standard.

×

i. **Standard** means the database will be populated with some basic default data, namely Statuses, Titles, Communication References, Booth Types, Budget Types, Payment Types, Location Features, and Location Setup Types.

Clients typically choose **Standard**, as they find it easier than starting from a completely blank database that has no frame of reference. The pre-entered status, titles, *etc*. can easily be edited to suit your organization's terminology.

ii. Blank means a completely blank database, with no pre-entered data.

If you are planning to restore an existing database over this new database, it doesn't really matter which data type you select.

- h. License File: Click the ellipsis (...) and browse to your license file (Licence.ini). This is the license file you downloaded earlier 182.
- i. When you have entered all of the target database information, click Next.
- 4. In the last page of the wizard, click **Finish**.
- 5. Now, if you have an existing database that needs to be restored, proceed to **Restore Existing Database over New**

If you are starting from a new database - *i.e.* you do not have an existing database that was sent from your EventPro Trainer, you can skip to <u>Give Database Rights to Users</u> 1951.

Restore Existing Database over New

In most cases, an EventPro Training or Support Specialist will provide you with a **database** that has been converted from a previous database and/or filled with information that you have provided.

You need to restore that database to the SQL Server before proceeding with EventPro installation.

With this process, you will be restoring the existing database **over** the new "**placeholder**" database you just created in the previous step.

Typically, the database is sent as a .BAK file, which you can restore in SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS).

Ensure that the existing database is stored on the same machine as SQL Server.

1. Run SQL Server Management Studio.

You may have a different version of SQL Server Management Studio than that depicted below, but the functions and settings should be essentially the same.

2. In the **Connect to Server** dialog, ensure that the correct **Server name** is selected (Network Computer Name\Named Instance, *e.g.* MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS).

Select either **Windows Authentication** or **SQL Server Authentication**. If you choose SQL Server Authentication, enter the **User Name** and **Password**.

(Remember that when <u>installing SQL Server</u> [178] earlier, you chose between **Windows Authentication** and **Mixed Mode (SQL Server + Windows Authentication)**, and set the password for the **sa** account.)

Click Connect.

	Query 📄 🔊 🕅 🕅 🕅	よ□ 台 フ・ぐ・ 図 ♬ 27 別 副 国 田 山 国 注 三王 - ∓×		ନ -	×
Object Explorer Connect ▼		× + ~			
	모 토 Connect to Server		×		
		SQL Server			
	Server type:	Database Engine	~		
	Server name:	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	~		
	Authentication:	Windows Authentication	~		
	User name:	MyVMD\Administrator	~		
	Password:	Remember password			
	E	Connect Cancel Help (Options >>		

3. In the **Object Explorer** panel of **Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio**, expand the Databases so that you can see **EventProData**.

Right-click on EventProData, and select Tasks > Restore > Database.

	r Management Studio		Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	×
	🖌 🏜 📲 🌗 🗿 New Query	elp ● ゐ ゐ ጪ ☆ ┃ よ □ お ? - < - 図 ♬ ■ ✓ ೫ ◎ ⊟ ೫ ೫ ഈ 過 ਜ਼ ฌ ∃ ≇ ऱ	• 😡 🌶 🖨 🗩 - 🖕	
Object Explorer Connect ▼ ¥ ¥ ■ ■ ■ MYDBSERVER\SQLE ■ Databases # ■ Databases # ■ Database St # ■ Database St # ■ EventProD # ■ EventProV # ■ Security # ■ Security # ■ Security	XPRESS (SQL Server 14.0 abases napshots New Database New Query			
 H Replication H PolyBase H Management E XEvent Profile 	Tasks Policies Facets Start PowerShell Azure Data Studio Reports Rename Delete Refresh	Vulnerability Assessment		
< ✓ Ready	Properties	Back Up Restore Generate Scripts Extract Data-tier Application Deploy Database to Microsoft Azure SQL Database Export Data-tier Application Upgrade Data-tier Application Import Flat File Import Data Export Data Export Data	Database Files and Filegroups Transaction Log	

- 4. The **Restore Database** window appears.
- 5. Under **Source**, select **Device**, and click the ellipsis next to the field.
 - a. The Select Backup Devices form appears.

R 1	🕵 R	estore Database - EventProDa	ta			_		×	□ ×
File	🐼 No	backupset selected to be restore	ed.						
6 G	Select Ge File		🗊 Script 👻 😯 Help						⊁≞ÿ
Object Conne	P Op		Source O Database:] [~	
			Database: Destination					~	
÷			Database: Restore to:	EventProData			Timeline	~	
±		🗯 Select backup devices				- 0	×		
± ±		Specify the backup media and	l its location for your restore opera	ation.				t LSN	
		Backup media type:	File		~				
		Backup media:					_		
						Add			
	Conn								
	¥₩ F [i					Contents			
	<u>View</u>								
	Progr							>	
	0							dia	
					OK Cancel	Help		p	
🗇 Rea	dv								

b. Click the Add button. The Locate Backup File window appears.

	Database - EventProData					- 0	×	□ ×
File 🔞 No backu	pset selected to be restored.							
G Select a pa	ge 🕻	🕽 Script 👻 😯 Help						¥≞ÿ
Object & Options		Source						
Conne		O Database:					\sim	
	backup devices	Devices		-		×		
Specify th	e backup media and its locatio	n for your restore operation.				-		
Backup m	edia type: Fil	📔 Locate Backup File - MYI	DBSERVER\SQLEXPF	RESS				×
Backup m	edia:	Backup File location:	C:\PSI APPLICA	TIONS\EventPro Software\Da	C			
₹ € • • • • • • • • • • • • •	ROIT DIODEITIES	Windows Photo Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Sideb Windows Sideb Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Pota Windows Sol Server2017Me System Volume Info System Volume Info Windows File name: 000	ble Devices par rShell S vare ter tant dia	000000_Sample.bak	Backup Files	s(*.bak;*tm;*.	log) Cancel	~

- c. In the **Locate Backup File** window, locate the existing database that your EventPro Trainer sent to you, which should have been saved on the same machine as SQL Server, as noted above.
- d. Click **OK** in the **Locate Backup File** window, and again in the **Select Backup Devices** window to return to the **Restore Database** form.
- 6. Back in the **Restore Database** form, under **Destination**, the **Database** should be set to **EventProData**.

. <mark></mark> N	💀 Restore Database - EventProDat	3	-		х		×
File	🐼 No backupset selected to be restore	ł.					_ !!
8 G •	Select a page	I Script → 3 Help				ع	<u> </u>
8 ⋕ 1	 General Files Options 	Source					
Conne		O Database:			~		
		Device:]			
		Database:			~		
		Destination					
		Database: EventProData			~		
		Restore to:		Timeline			
Œ		Restore plan					
+		Backup sets to restore:					
±		Restore Name Component Type Server Database Position First LSN Las	st LSN Ch	ieckpoint L	.SN		
+							
	Connection						
	HY MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample]						
	View connection properties						
	Progress						
	One Done	<	Verify Ba	ckup Media	a		
		ОК	Cancel	Help			
🗇 Rea	dy					-	

7. Ensure that you have selected the correct Source and Destination.

Microsoft SQL Server Management Stu	ıdio					Qu	ick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	٩	_ =	3
💀 Restore Database - EventProDat	a								- 1	o x	
 Ready 											
Select a page	🗐 Script 🕞	😮 Hel	р								
ect & General Files Options	Source -	ahase.								~	
	 Der 		С	:\PSI API	PLICATIONS\Even	ntPro Software∖Da	ata\000000_S	ample.bak			
		Database		00000				-		~	
	Destinatio	n —									
+	Database: EventProData									~	
+ +	Restor	Restore to: The last backup taken (Tuesday, April 16, 2019 5:05:15 PM) Timeline								meline	
•	Restore p	lan —									
+		sets to res									
+	Restore	Name	Component Database	Type Full	Server SRVR\SQL02	Database 000000	Position	First LSN	0000119800	Last 037 167	
			Database	- Cir	SATAGOLOL			1070000			
Connection											
Image: WYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample]											
View connection properties											
Progress	<									>	
Oone Done								[Verify Back	up Media	
							ОК	Car	ncel	Help	

8. In the left **Select a Page** panel, click on **Options**. Select the first checkbox, **Overwrite the Existing Database** (WITH REPLACE). (In this situation, we want the restored, prepared database from EventPro Training/Support to overwrite the blank "placeholder" database that we created in the previous step.)

- 🛃	Microsoft SQL Server Management	Studio		Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	ρ.	- 0	x	
File	💀 Restore Database - EventProDa	ta		-		×		
š G	Ready						÷	
0 1	Select a page	🗊 Script 👻 😯 Help						
Obje Cor	e General Files Options		tabase (WITH REPLACE) settings (WITH KEEP_REPLICATION) stored database (WITH RESTRICTED_USE	R)				
		Recovery state:	RESTORE WITH RECOVERY			~		
		Standby file:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se	erver\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRESS\N	ISSQL\E			
	6	Leave the database ready to	use by rolling back uncommitted transaction	s. Additional transaction logs canr	not be restore	d.		
	C G G G	Tail-Log backup Tail-Log backup Take tail-log backup befor Leave source data (WITH NORECOV Backup file: Server connections	ore restore abase in the restoring state (FRY) C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se	erver\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRESS\M	1SSQL\E			
	Connection	Close existing connection	ns to destination database					
Connection Image: Connection properties Image: Connection properties Prompt Image: Connection properties Prompt before restoring each backup Image: Connection properties Image: Connection properties								
	Progress							
	Done			OK Cancel	Hel	ρ		
	Ready							

- 9. Click **OK** at the bottom of the **Restore Database** dialog to begin the restore process.
- 10. When the restore is complete, you should receive a success dialog. Click OK.
- 11. You can now proceed to Give Database Rights to Users 1951.

Give Database Rights to Users

1. If you are not already in SQL Server Management Studio, run it now.

Ricrosoft SQL Server Management Studio			Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	₽ _ □	×
File Edit View Project Tools Window					
G - O 🏠 - 🖆 - 🏠 🔛 🔐 🗿 New		& □ □ ? • < • ⊠ ♬ 腔 認 ഈ 屈 霝 □ 草 湾 돈 좌		, / i 🛛 • -	
Object Explorer		- ₽ ×			
Connect ▼ 🚏 単 🍸 🖒 →					
	🖵 Connect to Server		×		
		SQL Server			
	Server type:	Database Engine	~		
	Server name:	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	~		
	Authentication:	Windows Authentication	~		
	User name:	MyVMD\Administrator	~		
	Password:	Remember password			
	l I	Connect Cancel Help	Options >>		
	L				
Ready					

- a. In the **Connect to Server** dialog, ensure that the correct **Server name** is selected (Network Computer Name\Named Instance, *e.g.* MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS).
- b. Select either **Windows Authentication** or **SQL Server Authentication**. If you choose SQL Server Authentication, enter the **User Name** and **Password**.

(Remember that when <u>installing SQL Server</u> 178) earlier, you chose between **Windows Authentication** and **Mixed Mode** (SQL Server + Windows Authentication), and set the password for the **sa** account.)

- c. Click Connect.
- 2. In the Object Explorer panel of SQL Server Management Studio, go to Security > Logins.
- 3. Right-click the Logins folder and select New Login.

🔀 Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio	Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)
File Edit View Project Tools Window Help	
🛛 G - O 🎦 - 🖆 - 🚔 🔛 📲 🗿 New Query 🗿 🔬 🔬 🔬 🐰 古 白 ジ - ペ - 🕅	🔎 🚽 🖓 🚈 🗒
※ 박 'Ÿ - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Object Explorer	
Connect - ₩ ×₩ = ▼ C →	
😑 😸 MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS (SQL Server 14.0.1000 - PSI	
🕀 🔚 Databases	
E Security	
⊕ <mark>⊫ Logins</mark> ⊕ ≡ Server New Login	
terest Credet Filter ►	
🗄 💼 Server 🛛 Start PowerShell	
🕀 🗮 Server Ob 💦 Reports 🔶	
😥 💼 Replicatio	
Management Arrow XEvent Profiler	
< >	
□ Ready	

4. The Login - New form appears.

🛃 Mic					_		×	∎ ×
File Edi	Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help						₽miţ
Object Exp Connect		Login name: Windows authentication SQL Server authentication Password: Confirm password: Specify old password Old password: Enforce password policy Enforce password expira				Search		
+ + +	Connection	 User must change passw Mapped to certificate Mapped to asymmetric key 	vord at next login		~			
€	Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS Connection: MyVMD\Administrator Wew connection properties	Map to Credential Mapped Credentials	Credential	Provider	~	Add		
	Progress Ready	Default database: Default language:	master <default></default>		~	Remov	e	
<					ОК	Canc	el	

- 5. Select the radio button next to **Windows Authentication** to indicate that you want **Users** to connect to the SQL Server Instance using **Windows Authentication**.
- 6. You now need to find the EventPro Security Groups that you created back in <u>Create Active Directory Groups for</u> Integration 163.
 - a. Click the Search button next to the Login Name field. The Select User or Group window appears.
 - b. Click the **Object Type** button. In the **Object Types** window, select the **Groups** checkbox and click **OK**.

_	- × • ×
r 😯 Help	<u>ب</u> ه ع
e: Internet in the second seco	Search
×	
Object Types	
Object Types	×
Select the types of objects you want to find. Object types: Other objects Select the types of objects you want to find. Object types: Other objects Select the types of objects you want to find. Object types: Other objects Select the types of objects you want to find. Object types: Select the types of objects you want to find.	
abase:	
OK OK	Cancel
abase:	

c. Back in the Select User or Group window, click the Locations button.

Select the correct **Domain** in the **Locations** window, and click **OK**. This is the Domain in which you created the EventPro User Security groups.

🔀 Mici	- Login in					_		×	□ ×
File Edit	Select a page		🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help						¢ ≞ ¢
8 ₩ \ ¥	 Server Role User Mappi Securables 	ing	Login name:				Search		, – ÷
Object Exp Connect •	- Status		 Windows authentication SQL Server authentication 						
			Password: Confirm password:						
E =	Select User	or Group		×					
÷	Select this o User, Group	bject type: o, or Built-in security	principal	Object Types					
+	Locations	5			<				
主 📫	C Select the	location you want t	o search.			~			
± =	Location:	MYDBSERVER				~	Add		
		Entire Directory			Provider				
	L.								
	Prc					~	Remove		
				OK Cancel]	~			
<						ОК	Cancel		
☐ Ready									

d. Finally, enter a search term in the bottom field of the **Select User or Group** window, *e.g.* **EventPro**, and click the **Check Names** button.

🛃 Mici 📱 Login - New				_		□ ×
File Edit Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help					≠ ≞‡
Server Roles	Login name:				Search	
Object Exp Status	Windows authentication					
Connect •	SQL Server authentication					
🖃 🗟 PS	Password:					
	Confirm password:					
	Specify old password					
÷.	Old password:					
Ŧ	Enforce password policy					
±	 Enforce password expirat 	tion				
+ =	User must change passw					
Select User, Service Account	;, or Group	×		\sim		
• C Select this object type:				\sim		
User, Group, or Built-in security	y principal	Object Types		~	Add	
From this location:			rovider			
MyVMD.local		Locations				
Enter the object name to select	t (examples):					
EventPro		Check Names				
Pi					Remove	
Advanced		OK Cancel		~		
-48*	Default language:	<default></default>		~		
	an ingeogo.					
<				ОК	Cancel	
🗇 Ready						

e. If there are multiple matching results in the **Multiple Names Found** window, select the group(s) for which you want to assign database rights, and click **OK**. In this example, we will select the **EventPro Users** security group.

As you will recall from above, you may have created a broad EventPro Users Security Group with multiple department-based sub-groups nested within it. At this point, assuming you want all the departmental groups to have the same access rights to the database, you can just select the main **EventPro Users** group to encompass all of the departmental sub-groups within.

🔀 Mice 📱 Login - New		_		□ ×
File Edit Select a page				≠ ≞ ‡
Server Roles			Search	
Object Exp Securables Status Windows authentication				
Connect SQL Server authentication Ref Password:				
Confirm password:	_			
Select User, Service Account, or Group	<			
Image: Select this object type: Image: I				
H Multiple Names Found	×	1		
		~		
🗄 💻 Ser a		~	Add	
PSI Matching names: Cor Name Logon Name (pre-Windows 2000) PSI	E-Mail Address			
PS EventPro Administrators EventPro Administrators VII EventPro Users EventPro Users				
Progress			Remove	
		~		
< <	>	~		
<	OK Cancel	ОК	Cancel	1

- f. Click **OK** in the **Select User or Group** form to return to **Login New**.
- 7. The Login Name will now be populated with the group you selected.

🛃 Mici	E cogin new				_	X	ı x
File Edit	Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help					a (
8 ¥ ¥	 Server Roles User Mapping 	Login name:	MyVMD\EventPro Users			Search	
Object Exp	 Securables Status 	Windows authentication					
Connect •		SQL Server authentication					
🖃 🐻 PS		Password:					
± 🗐		Confirm password:					
= =		Specify old password					
±		Old password:					
ŧ		Enforce password policy					
÷		 Enforce password expiration 	tion				
±		User must change passv	vord at next login				
± =		 Mapped to certificate 			\sim		
÷ 🗐	Connection	 Mapped to asymmetric key 			\sim		
+ F	Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	Map to Credential			~	Add	
± ±	Connection:	Mapped Credentials	Credential	Provider			
	MyVMD\Administrator						
	Progress					Remove	
	Ready	Default database:	EventProMaster		~		
	New Y	Default language:	<default></default>		~		
		berault language.					
<				[ОК	Cancel	
🗇 Ready							

- 8. Ensure that the **Windows Authentication** radio button is selected, which you would have done earlier.
- 9. Near the bottom, you can set the **Default Database** to **EventProMaster**.
- 10. Next, in the Select a Page panel of the Login New form, select the User Mapping page.

Select the Map checkboxes for the EventProData and EventProMaster databases.

You then need to set the $\ensuremath{\textit{database}}$ role $\ensuremath{\textit{membership}}$ for each database.

a. Select **EventProMaster** in the top grid, and select the checkboxes next to **db_datareader** and **db_datawriter** below.

. <mark>.</mark>	📕 Login - New					_		×	×
File	Select a page General	Script	🔻 😯 Help						
8 ⋕	 Server Roles User Mapping 	Users map	pped to this login:						Ĺ
Object	 Securables Status 	Map	Database	User	Default Schema				
Conne	- Status	\checkmark	EventProData	MyVMD\EventPro Users					
			EventProMaster	MyVMD\EventPro Users					
= 🗟			master						
Ŧ			model						
			msdb						
			tempdb						
+	Connection								
÷	Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS		account enabled for: EventProMaster role membership for: EventProMaster						
	Connection: MyVMD\Administrator	db_ba	ccessadmin ackupoperator						
	View connection properties	db_da	atareader						
		db_da	atawriter Iladmin						
		db_de	enydatareader						
	Deserves		enydatawriter						
	Progress Ready	☐ db_ov ☐ db_se ☑ public	curityadmin						
<						OK	Can	cel	

b. Next, select **EventProData** in the top grid, and select the checkboxes next to **db_datareader** and **db_datawriter** at the bottom.

	Login - New					-		×	×
File	Select a page	Script	🔻 🕜 Help						 ∓
8 † 1	 Server Roles User Mapping 		oped to this login:						
Object	 Securables Status 	Map	Database	User	Default Schema				
Conne			EventProData	MyVMD\EventPro Users					
		\checkmark	EventProMaster	MyVMD\EventPro Users					
= 🗟			master						
÷			model						
			msdb						
			tempdb						
*	Connection Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS		account enabled for: EventPro						
	Connection: MyVMD\Administrator	db_ba	ccessadmin ickupoperator						
		db_da							
		⊘ db_da	tawriter Iladmin						
			nydatareader						
	-	db_de	nydatawriter						
	Progress	db_ov	vner curityadmin						
	Ready	db_se							
<					C	K	Can	ncel	
C Rea	day.								i

- c. You also need to give the db_owner right to at least one Login group, since the db_owner right to EventProData is required for updating EventPro Software with new releases. How you assign the db_owner right depends on who will be performing software updates.
 - i. Some organizations want only the Administrator to update EventPro Software. In this case, you would typically have an **EventPro Administrators Security Group** that is separate from an **EventPro Users Security Group**. You would give **db_owner** to the **EventPro Administrators Login** only.
 - ii. On the other hand, some organizations allow any User administrator or otherwise to update EventPro Software. In this case, you would typically create an EventPro Users Group with the EventPro Administrators nested as a sub-group within it. You would then assign db_owner to the EventPro Users Login, thereby giving the ability to update the software to all Users, regular or administrator.

To review how you set up Active Directory Groups, see <u>Create Active Directory Groups for Integration</u> 1631.

- 11. When you are done with the Login edit form, click OK. The Login will be added under Security > Logins.
- 12. If necessary, you can add another New Login.

Again, it depends on whether you have the EventPro Administrators Security Group set up as a separate group or nested within the **EventPro Users Security Group**.

If the EventPro Administrators Security Group is separate, you now need to create a **Login** for it, repeating the steps above and assigning the db-owner right to EventProData to the EventPro Administrators group.

13. When you are done creating Logins in the SQL Server Management Studio, you can exit it, and proceed to Install EventPro to Server 2001.

Install EventPro to Server

Because you are performing a **Network Installation**, this installation process must first be done from the **Application Server**.

1. Navigate to the EventPro.Win.Setup.exe you downloaded earlier [182], and double-click to run it.

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may receive a warning about installing software, and you may need to click **Run** or **OK** to continue the installation.

2. The installation wizard will begin. Click Next to continue.

। EventPro Setup	×
-2 ⁴	Welcome to the EventPro Setup Wizard
	The Setup Wizard will install EventPro on your computer. Click "Next" to continue or "Cancel" to exit the Setup Wizard.
	< Back Next > Cancel

3. End-User License Agreement:

- a. Please read the EventPro Software Program License Agreement.
- b. Select **I ACCEPT** or **I DO NOT ACCEPT** below. If you do not accept the license agreement, you cannot continue with the installation process.
- c. Click **Next** to continue.

nd-User License Agreement		
Please read the following license	e agreement carefully	
EventBre Sef	huara Brogram	Liconco
	tware Program Agreement	License
	LLOWING TERMS AND	CONDITIONS
BEFORE INSTALLING TH INDICATES YOUR AC	IS SOFTWARE. INSTALL CEPTANCE OF THESE O NOT AGREE WITH TH	ATION OR USE TERMS AND
BEFORE INSTALLING TH INDICATES YOUR AC CONDITIONS. IF YOU D	IS SOFTWARE. INSTALL CEPTANCE OF THESE O NOT AGREE WITH THE	ATION OR USE TERMS AND

4. Installation Type: Choose Server Installation, and click Next.

(Review Installation Types above, if necessary.)

🐁 EventPro Setup			×
Installation Type Select the type of installation to perform.			5
O Stand Alone Installation			
 Server Installation 			
O Workstation Installation			
Advanced Installer			
	< Back	Next >	Cancel

5. Installation Options: Select the checkbox next to Use Active Directory to log into EventPro.

Click Next.

EventPro Setup Installation Options These are options for running EventPro.	×
☑ Use Active Directory to log into EventPro. (This requires a license that supports active direct	ory.)
Advanced Installer	lext > Cancel

6. Select Installation Folder:

- a. You can use the default **Program Files** path or enter a new path for the **Installation Folder**.
- b. If you do enter a different folder path, take note of it, as you will need it again for the workstation installs.
- c. Click Next.

👼 EventPro Setup	_		×
Select Installation Folder		5	Ve
This is the folder where EventPro will be installed.			
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, en "Browse".	ter it b	elow or clic	k
Folder:			
C:\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro\		Browse	
Advanced Installer	>	Can	cel

7. SQL Database:

- a. Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when installing SQL Server (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS"). It will look something like this:
 MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS.
- b. Select the radio button next to **Windows Authentication**. (As you will recall from <u>above</u> [198], you set up the **SQL Server Logins** to use **Windows Authentication**.)
- c. Click Next.

둸 EventPro Setup	×
SQL Database	
Configure SQL Co	nnection
Before updatin backup of the o	g an existing database you should first make sure you have a latabase.
Server:	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS
Authentication:	Windows Authentication
	○ SQL Authentication
Username:	Administrator
Password:	
Advanced Installer —	
	< Back Next > Cancel

- 8. The Installer will test the connection to the database before you can proceed with the installation.
- 9. When the connection test is completed, click **Install**.

EventPro Setup	<
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro installation	5
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, dick "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.	
Advanced Installer	

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may encounter a warning, and you may need to click **Yes** or **OK** to continue the installation.

10. In the final window, click **Finish**.



11. Now the Server Installation process is complete. Before moving on to Workstation Installations, you first need to <u>Share</u> <u>the Installation Folder</u> [21].

Share Installation Folder

On the server to which you just installed EventPro, locate the folder in which EventPro was installed. By default, it would be **C: \ProgramFiles (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro**, but you may have selected a different folder path in the <u>Select</u> Installation Folder [208] page of the installation wizard.

The exact process of sharing the folder will vary, depending on the network environment in which you are working. The instructions below provide an example, but you may have to consult the documentation for your network and operating system to determine how to share the Installation Folder from the Application Server to Workstations.

1. Right-click on the **EventPro** folder, and select **Share With > Advanced Sharing**.

_	🏭 l 💽 🚯 = l	EventPro Software	I
		iew V	
ecycle Bin		ke (C:) ► Program Files (x86) ► EventPro Software ► ✓ ♥ Search EventPro Software ►	
Recycle bill			
	Downloads	Name Date modified Type Size	
	🔛 Recent places	EventPro	
	💷 This PC	Open Open in new window	
	Desktop		
	Documents	Share with Advanced sharing	
	\rm Downloads	Restore previous versions	
	🚺 Music	Include in library Pin to Start	
	📔 Pictures		
	📔 Videos	Send to	
	📥 Local Disk (C:)	Cut	
	PerfLogs	Сору	
	Program Files	Create shortcut	
	Program Files (x86)	Delete	
	Common Files	Rename	
	EventPro	Properties	
	Internet Explorer		
	Microsoft.NET		
	Windows Mail		
	Windows NT		
	WindowsPowerShell		
	Users	×	
	1 item 1 item selected		
			 Ro Ra US 2015

The folder's Properties will appear. Initially, the Sharing tab will indicate that the folder is Not Shared.
 Click the Advanced Sharing button.



3. In the Advanced Sharing dialog, select the checkbox next to Share this Folder.

You can leave the Share Name as EventPro.
Recycle Bin Seneal Sharing Security Previous Versions Customize Network File and Folder Sharing EventPro Software VerterPro Network Path: Advanced Sharing Stare Stare Stare Advanced Sharing With Distare Advanced Sharing With Distare Advanced Sharing With Distare Advanced Sharing With Distare <tr< th=""><th>□ x ~ ? ~</th></tr<>	□ x ~ ? ~
Image: WBOXSVR Image	12:42 PM

4. Click the Permissions button to view the Share Permissions for the EventPro folder.
Users installing EventPro to their workstations require Read and Change permissions to this folder.
Click OK, and OK again to return to the EventPro folder Properties.

Recycle Bin	EventPro Properties General Sharing Security Previous Versions Cus Network File and Folder Sharing EvertPro Not Shared Network Path: Not Shared Share Advanced Sharing Set custom permissions, create multiple shares, and advanced sharing options. @ Advanced Sharing Close Cancel	Advanced Sharing	Share Permissions	Software P Size
		₩ VBOXSVR ₩ WINSRVR2012 1 item 1 item selected		ENG 1:15 PM
🛨 📥 🖉			- Ro 🖫	US 2015-11-23

5. Go to the **Security** tab in **EventPro Properties**, and click the **Edit** button to open the **Permissions for EventPro** window.

	🔐 I 🕞 🚯 👳 I	EventPro Software			_ D X	
		View			· · · ·	8
ecycle Bin		Disk (C:) ▶ Program Files (x86) ▶ EventPro Software	× ¢	Search EventPro Sof		
	Downloads	∧ Name	Date modified	Туре	Size	
	 Recent places This PC Desktop Documents Music Pictures Videos Local Disk (C:) PerfLogs Program Files Program Files EventPro Software EventPro Internet Explorer Microsoft.NET Windows Naii Windows Naii Windows Prol Windows Prol	E Object name: O Group or user name: O Group or user name Image: CREATOR C SySTEM Image: SySTEM SySTEM<	EATION PACKAGES DWNER Sere ///////////////////////////////////	ns Customize		
	1 item 1 item selected		OK Car	Apply		
						▲ 🕞 🍘 🔩 ENG 10:18 A

6. In **Permissions for EventPro**, click the **Add** button to open the **Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups** window.

	3 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1	EventPro Software
	File Home Share View	~ 0
Recycle Bin	🕞 🍥 👻 🕇 퉬 « Local Disk (C:) 🕨 Program Files (x	86) > EventPro Software v C Search EventPro Software P
	Downloads ^ Name	Date modified Type Size
	EventPro	EventPro Properties
	🖳 This PC	General Sharing Security Previous Versions Customize
	Desktop	Object name: C:\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPr
	Downloads	Group or user names:
	₩ Music E Pictures	REFACE OWNER
	Videos	SYSTEM Security Security Object name: C\Program Files k86\\EventPro Software\EventPr
	📥 Local Disk (C:) DerfLogs	Collect name: C:\Program Hies (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPr To change permissions, click Edit. Group or user names:
	Program Files Program Files (x86)	Permissions for ALL
	Common Files	Full control
	EventPro Software	Modify & Administrators (MYVMD\Administrators) Read & execute & Users (MYVMD\Users) v
	Internet Explorer	List folder contents
	Microsoft.NET	Add Remove
	Windows NT	For special permissions or advanced sett Clerk Advanced.
	WindowsPowerShell	Read & execute
	1 item 1 item selected	Uist folder contents
		OK Cancel Apply
		OK Cancel Apply
		n n a ENG 10-21 AM
		▲ 100 1021 AM

7. In the **Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups** window, ensure that **Users** and **Groups** are selected under **Object Types**, and that the **Location** is correct (*i.e.* the Domain in which you created the EventPro User Security groups).



- х | 🛃 🚺 = | EventPro Software Home Share View v ? **Recycle Bin** (⇐) ⇐ ↑ ↓ ≪ Local Disk (C:) ► Program Files (x86) ► EventPro Software ✓ ♂ Search EventPro Software Q x Size Name **EventPro Properties** 쑦 Favorites Desktop EventPro General Sharing Security Previous Versions Custor 退 Downloads х Recent places Ob Permissions for EventPro Security 💻 This PC 膧 Desktop Object n X Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups Documents Group o 退 Downloads 🖶 ALL Select this object type Music То SR CR Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals Object Types... Pictures SYS SYS Per AP From this location Sec. Videos MyVMD.local Locatio & Eve Local Disk (C:) x Multiple Names Found Enter the object name: 🥸 CD Drive (D:) VirtualBox Guest SharedVM (\\vboxsrv) (E;) More than one object matched the name "eventpro". Select one or more names from this list, or, reenter the name. APPI ICA 📬 Network Full o Matching names Advanced... For clic Modify Logon Name (pre-Windo... E-Mail Address Description In Fol Read and and a 🔼 EventPro Admir EventPro Administrators MyVN List folder contents Read 1 item 1 item selected OK ОК Cancel ENG 3:00 PM , de $\mathbf{\Sigma}$ - 😼 🖬 🕼 US 2015-11-09

Type EventPro in the field below and click Check Names.

In the **Multiple Names Found** window, select the correct Security Group(s). As noted before, you may have nested the EventPro Administrators group within the EventPro Users group, or created the two groups separately. Whichever way you chose to create your security groups, just ensure that you select the correct groups when assigning rights and permissions.

Click OK.

Click OK in the Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups window.

8. In **Permissions for EventPro**, select the relevant security group, and ensure that the **Allow** checkboxes for **Read & Execute**, **List Folder Contents**, and **Read** are selected.

Users will also require Write permissions for the installation process, in order to write to the directory.

For normal operation, Users do not require **Modify** and **Write** permissions. However, if Users do not have **Modify** and **Write** permissions, they will not be able to automatically update EventPro on their workstations; they would require assistance from an Admin User. If you want Users to be able to automatically update EventPro themselves, they require **Modify** and **Write** permissions.

Click OK, and OK again.

	<mark>⊯ ⊇ ∏</mark> = File Home Share View	EventPro Software
Recycle Bin	(€) ♥ ↑ ↓ Cocal Disk (C:) ▶ Program Files	(x86) → EventPro Software → ¢ Search EventPro Software
Recycle Bin	 	Date modified Type Size EventPro Properties EventPro Properties Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPr Group or user names: Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPr Collect name: C·\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro SySTEM Collarge permissions, click Edit. Permissions for ALL APPLICATION PACKAGES Full control Modify Read & execute List folder contents Read Write For special permissions or advanced set click Advanced. OK
		OK Cancel Apply
		▲ 😼 🕼 🕩 ENG 10:21 AM

9. Now that you have shared the folder with the EventPro Users, you can proceed to Install EventPro to Workstations 217.

Install EventPro to Workstations

- 1. Login to the **Workstation** computer as the Administrator.
- 2. Navigate to the **EventPro.Win.Setup.exe** you <u>downloaded earlier</u> [182], and double-click to run it.

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may receive a warning about installing software, and you may need to click **Run** or **OK** to continue the installation.

3. The installation wizard will begin. Click **Next** to continue.



4. End-User License Agreement:

- a. Please read the EventPro Software Program License Agreement.
- b. Select **I ACCEPT** or **I DO NOT ACCEPT** below. If you do not accept the license agreement, you cannot continue with the installation process.
- c. Click Next to continue.

👼 EventPro Setup	×
End-User License Agreement	
Please read the following license agreement carefully	
	•
EventPro Software Program Lic	ense
Agreement	
READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS AND CO BEFORE INSTALLING THIS SOFTWARE. INSTALLATION	
INDICATES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TE	
CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THEM,	PROMPTLY
I accept the terms in the License Agreement	
\bigcirc I do not accept the terms in the License Agreement	
Advanced Installer	
< Back Next >	Cancel

5. Installation Type:

- a. This time, choose Workstation Installation.
- b. Click Next.

👼 EventPro Setup	×
Installation Type	
Select the type of installation to perform.	
O Stand Alone Installation	
○ Server Installation	
Workstation Installation	
Advanced Installer	
< Back Next >	Cancel

6. Installation Options:

- a. Select the checkbox next to Use Active Directory to log into EventPro.
- b. Click Next.



7. Select Installation Folder:

- a. You can use the default **Program Files** path for the Installation Folder, or enter a different folder path, if you prefer.
- b. Click Next.

ᡖ EventPro Setup	_		×
Select Installation Folder		<	V
This is the folder where EventPro will be installed.		X	
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, ent "Browse".	er it be	low or clic	k
Folder:			
C:\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro\		Browse	
Advanced Installer			
< Back Next >	,	Cano	cel

8. SQL Database:

- a. Enter the **SQL Server Named Instance**, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when installing SQL Server (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS"). It will look something like this: **MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS**.
- b. Select the radio button next to **Windows Authentication**. (As you will recall from <u>above</u>, you set up the **SQL Server Logins** to use **Windows Authentication**.)
- c. Click Next.

둸 EventPro Setup	×
SQL Database	- For
Configure SQL Co	nnection
Before updating backup of the d	g an existing database you should first make sure you have a atabase.
Server:	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS
Authentication:	Windows Authentication
	○ SQL Authentication
Username:	
Password:	
Advanced Installer —	
	< Back Next > Cancel

9. The Installer will test the connection to the database before you can proceed with the installation.

10. Select Server Path:

- a. Enter the path to the installation on the server. This is the <u>Installation Folder</u> you selected during the Server Installation, and **shared** with the EventPro User Group in the <u>previous step</u> [211].
- b. Click the **Browse** button, locate that folder on the Network, and click **Select Folder**.
- c. Click Next.

EventPro Setup		×
Select Server Path		
Enter the path to the installation on the ser	ver.	A CO
To install in this folder, click "Next". To insta "Browse".	ll to a different folder, e	nter it below or click
Server Folder:		
		Browse
Advanced Installer	< Back Next	> Cancel

11. Ready to Install: Click Install.

The EventPro Setup X
Ready to Install
The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro installation
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, dick "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.
Advanced Installer
< Back Sack Cancel

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may encounter a warning, and you may need to click **Yes** or **OK** to continue the installation.

12. In the final window, click Finish.



- 13. Now the workstation installation process is complete.
- 14. Repeat this process on the other workstations in your network.

- 15. You may want to create an **EventPro shortcut** on each User's desktop so that they can easily locate and run EventPro.
- 16. When you are done installing EventPro to the Server and Workstations, you can proceed to <u>Admin First Login to</u> <u>EventPro</u> 223.

Admin First Login to EventPro

The first User to login to EventPro will become an **Administrator**, as long as that User has sufficient **Rights** to the **SQL Server**.

1. Run EventPro.

NOTE: If you are running Windows in a domain environment, and use a domain user account to log on to a Windows Server 2012-based domain controller, you may receive Error 1301. This is not an EventPro error. It is a **Windows bug** wherein certain security identifiers (SIDs) cannot be mapped.

The hotfix for this bug can be found on the Microsoft Support website, KB2830145. Download and run the hotfix. Note that the hotfix will not run if Windows Update Services are set to disabled.

EventPro		×
An An	e following error occurred: n error (1301) occurred while enumerating the groups. The group's SID uld not be resolved.	* *
	OK	
	Copyright © 2015 Profit Systems Inc.	

After you run the hotfix and restart the computer, you can run EventPro again.

- 2. The **EventPro** program opens.
- 3. Click My Details under My Workplace in the left-hand navigation pane. Your Security User edit form opens.

Take note of some of the details that have been entered automatically, using the properties of the Active Directory User:

0 ≞ ≃ ⊕ @	C 🗄 🛱 '> 🔸	Administrator@MyVMD - Security	/ User -	EventPro			—		×
Home View	v Tools								^
New Clone Save S	ave and Save and New Save and Close Save	Change My Password Password Add Note Edit		enerate Api Key Record Edit	Open Related Record	Refresh Audit Log View	 Find Previous Record Next Record Records Navigation 	Close Close	
My Workplace <	凝 Administrator@MyVMD 🛛 🗙								*
🔏 My Details	凝 User			Options Regio	nal Settings Messages E	PConnect Settings			
Menton Para Para Para Para Para Para Para Par	User Type: Account:* User Name:* User Code:* Change Password On First Logon Inactive Font Color: Back Color: Api Key:	Named Kirk, Allison ~ [Administrator @MyVMD.local Administrator @MyVMD Black LightGray			pup Windows In Tab Switch g Tab (faster): estination: review When Printed ient Selection On Double Cl ne Count: :	✓ None Preview Non Modal Popu Default	p	5	
🏠 My Workplace				Default Task Tir		8:00 AM			
📌 Events				Default Task Tir Use Legacy Skir		9:00 AM			_
 Lodging CRM/Sales Communications Tasks Finance Reports \$\mathcal{e}\$ if \$\cdots\$ 	Security Roles User Grou	25 M Email Accounts ⓐ ⓐ ♀ ↓ ि ↓ 〕 〕						*	

- a. You will note that you are logged in as your **Active Directory User Logon Name**, which is also your **EventPro User Name**.
- b. In the **Account** field, a **Contact** has been created with the details from the Active Directory User.
- c. Under the **Security Roles** tab, you have been assigned the **Administrator** Security Role.
- 4. You can edit your Security User details and Contact information in EventPro. However, note that there are some limits to what you can edit in EventPro when using Active Directory Integration. Some changes need to be made back in Active Directory. See <u>Active Directory/EventPro Sync</u> ^[230] below.
- 5. As the Administrator, there are several actions you may want to complete before other Users log into EventPro:
 - a. <u>Create Internal Company</u> 224: Enter your internal **Company** in EventPro's CRM, and attach your Contact record to the Company (if applicable)
 - b. <u>Set Default Account</u> 225: Set your Company as the **Default Account** in Events System Settings (if applicable).
 - c. <u>Edit Administrator Security Role</u> Adjust the Administrator Security Role so that it only applies to Administrators.
 - d. <u>Create Security Roles</u> 227: Create additional Security Roles for other Users.
- 6. When you have finished the steps described above, you can allow other Users to log into EventPro. See <u>User First</u> <u>Login to EventPro</u>

Create Internal Company

With Active Directory Integration, when a User first logs into EventPro, the program will automatically create a linked **Contact** for the User with information from the Active Directory User properties.

If you are the first person to log into EventPro, a Contact will be created from your **Active Directory User properties**, but that Contact will **not** be attached to a **Company**.

You don't need to create a company for your organization or attach contacts to a company, but you may find it useful for internal processes. If you want your internal Users/Contacts to be attached to a Company in EventPro's CRM, you need to add your organization as a Company.

- 1. Follow the instructions under Company/Contact Management (CRM) > Add New Company (Company Edit Form) in the <u>EventPro User Manual</u> to add your organization as a Company in EventPro's CRM.
- 2. You can then link your Contact to the Company, referring to Add New Company > Company Contacts > Link Existing Contact in the EventPro User Manual.
- When other Users/Contacts are added to EventPro, they can also be linked to the internal Company. This will be done automatically if you set your Company as the Default Account under EventPro Setup > Events > System Settings. See the next step: <u>Set Default Account</u> ²²⁵.

Set Default Account

This is an optional step, and may not be applicable to your organization.

If you entered your organization as a **Company** in EventPro's CRM (<u>see above</u> 224), you have the option to set your Company as the **Default Account** in **Event System Settings**. Doing so will make your Company the default Event Client each time you start an event booking.

Also, setting your Company as the **Default Account** will cause the Contacts of newly logged-in Users to be automatically be attached to your Company, pulling in their company Positions from the User Job Title in Active Directory.

If you do not want to set your Company as the Default Account, you can manually link the Contacts to a Company after Users log in for the first time.

1. To set your **Company** as the **Default Account**, go to **EventPro Setup > Events > System Settings > People**.

<u></u> 0 ≞ ≃ C	EventPro Setup - EventPro —	
Home Vie	ew Tools	^
Effective Date 1/1/2018: 2018	Rates Modify Refresh Rest View Close	
Setup <	♣ Administrator@MyVMD	-
EventPro Setup EventProConnect Setup Virtual Assistant Setup User Field Definition	Image: Second	4 >>
Model Management	Dates/Times People Wizard Options Miscellaneous Function Options	
# Sequence Numbers	Automatically assign events to user creating the booking Default Event Manager: RJV	- 🖶
Security		- E
	Default Account: *EP Event Venue	- 📑
 [♠] My Workplace [●] Events [●] Lodging [●] CRM/Sales [●] CRM/Sales [●] Communications [●] Tasks [●] Finance [●] Reports [●] ···· [●] ···· [●] ···· [●] ···· [●] ···· 		

- 2. Search for and select your internal **Company** from the **Default Account** drop-down.
- 3. Click the **Save** icon at the top of the **System Settings** tab.

- 4. You can now exit this area of Setup.
- 5. Proceed to Edit Administrator Security Role 226.

Edit Administrator Security Role

This is an **important step** that is required for most organizations.

As you may have noticed, when you first logged into EventPro, you were automatically assigned the Administrator Security Role.

The Administrator Security Role will be automatically assigned to any User who logs into EventPro, until you edit it.

If you don't want everyone in EventPro to have Administrator rights - which is likely the case - you need to specify who should be assigned this role.

- 1. In EventPro, go to Setup > Security > Roles.
- 2. Double-click the Administrator role record to open the Administrator Security Role edit form.

<u> </u>	Security - EventPro	—	□ ×
Home Vi	/iew Tools		~
Setup <	Security ×		
 EventPro Setup EventProConnect Setup Virtual Assistant Setup User Field Definition Model Management Sequence Numbers Security 	Jusers Roles Ware Role Type Administrator Administrator		×
	Active Directory Groups: Everyone Role Type: Administrator		*
🏠 My Workplace	Login User Name 🔺 User Code Account Inactive		
📌 Events	Administrator@MyVMD Administrator@MyVMD Kirk, Allison		
🔳 Lodging			
CRM/Sales			
Communications			
🖻 Tasks			
Finance			_
Reports			
🦺 🕂			.::

- 3. Looking at the **Active Directory Groups** field at the top of the edit form, you will see that the **Administrator Security Role** is assigned to "**Everyone**".
- 4. Use the arrow to open the drop-down.
 - a. Unselect the "Everyone" checkbox.
 - b. Select the checkbox next to the EventPro Administrators Active Directory Group.
- 5. Save and Close the Security Role edit form.
- 6. Now the Administrator Security Role will only be assigned to Users who are part of the **EventPro Administrators Active Directory Group**.

 Now you need to create other Security Roles and assign them to the relevant Active Directory Groups, so that when other Users log into EventPro, they are assigned to the correct EventPro Security Roles. Go to <u>Assign Security</u> <u>Roles to AD Groups</u> 227.

Assign Security Roles to AD Groups

Now you need to assign Security Roles to the other Active Directory Groups besides Administrators. That way, when other Users log into EventPro, they will be assigned to the correct EventPro Security Roles based on their Active Directory Group membership.

1. In EventPro, go to Setup > Security > Roles.

<u> </u>	→ Security - EventPro	—	×
Home Vie	View Tools		^
Refresh Reset View Settings View Close	se		
Setup <			*
ở EventPro Setup	🐉 Users 🤯 Roles 👹 User Groups 🎼 Security Owners 🧕 Audit Log		
🖑 EventProConnect Setup	□ 🗳 🗙 👼 🖬 • Ĉ 📑 🗊 ∞ ⊚ ② Ϋ • 🕞 • 🗔 🤣 🖉		
🐉 Virtual Assistant Setup	Name 🔺 Role Type		
🍰 User Field Definition	Administrator Administrator		
🧬 Model Management	Catering Other		
	Default Default		
# Sequence Numbers	Default-Other Other		
G Security	Events Other		
	Finance Other		
	Online Online		
	Sales Other		
☆ My Workplace			
📌 Events			
🔄 Lodging			
🖳 CRM/Sales			
<u></u> Ω ♥ …	•		

2. There are several different Role Types: Administrator, Default, Other, and Online.

(Review Security Setup > Roles (Security Permissions) > Create Security Roles > Role in the <u>EventPro User</u> <u>Manual</u>.)

- 3. The **Administrator Security Role** should be assigned to the EventPro Administrators Active Directory Group only, as noted <u>above</u> 226. Typically, very few Users should get this Security Role, as it allows full access to the program.
- 4. How you set up the other Security Roles will depend on whether all the other Users, besides Administrators have the same or different security permissions.
 - a. If all other Users besides Administrators will have the same security rights in EventPro, you could use the **Default Security Role** for your general EventPro Users Active Directory Group.
 - b. However, if you want to further **compartmentalize** User security permissions in EventPro for example, differentiating rights based on department you need to create **additional EventPro Security Roles**.
- 5. If you want to use the **Default** Security Role for your entire EventPro Users Active Directory Group, you can adjust the Default Security Role so that it provides the correct permissions for the Users.
 - a. Double-click the Default Security Role record to open its edit form.
 - b. Set the Active Directory Groups field to the relevant Active Directory security group, *e.g.* EventPro Users.
 - c. Adjust the specific security permissions for this role, as required.

(Review Security Setup > Roles (Security Permissions) > Create Security Roles > Permissions in the EventPro User Manual.)

d. When you are done editing the Default Security Role, click Save and Close.

◎ 🗎 🛎 😋														
<u>~ 0 0 C</u>	目間り・					Default - Security Role							- C]
Home														
New Clone	Gave Save and S Close	Save and New S	Save and Car Clone	· ·	Delete	Open Related Record	C Refresh	Audit Log	ම්ම Find	Previous Record	Next Record	Close		
Records Creation		Save		E	Edit	Open Related Recor	l Vie	w	R	ecords Na	igation	Close		
🧐 Role														
Name:	Default													
Active Directory Group	s: EventPro User	rs												Ŧ
Role Type:	Default													-
Security	CRM 🔮 Even					er Interface Permission: tions 🛛 💭 Communicat		ed Permiss	ons					_
Security Access Security: Reset Password:	CRM 📌 Even							ed Permiss	ons					*
Security Access Security: Reset Password:	CRM deven	ts 🔚 Financia						ed Permiss	ons					•
Security Access Security: Reset Password: Setup Access Setup:	CRM Seven	ts 📰 Financia						ed Permiss	ons					
Security Access Security: Reset Password: Setup Access Setup: Modify Setup Items	CRM deven	ts Financia						ed Permiss	ons					•
Security Access Security: Reset Password: Setup Access Setup:	ione CRM CRM CRM CRM CRM CRM CRM CRM CRM CRM CRM	ts 📰 Financia						ed Permiss	ons					*
Security Access Security: Reset Password: Setup Access Setup: Modify Setup Items Create Setup Items	Ione Keny Ione Keny Ione Keny	ts Financia						ed Permiss	ons					* * *
Security Access Security: N Reset Password: Setup Access Setup: Modify Setup Items Create Setup Items Delete Setup Items	Ione Keny Ione Keny Ione Keny	ts Financia						ed Permiss	ons					•
Security Access Security: Reset Password: Setup Access Setup: Modify Setup Items Create Setup Items: Delete Setup Items: Allow Open Object of	CRM CRM	ts Financia						ed Permiss	ons					* * *
Security Access Security: Reset Password: Setup Access Setup: Modify Setup Items Create Setup Items Delete Setup Items: Allow Open Object of User Fields	CRM CRM	ts Financia						ed Permiss	ons					•
Security Access Security: Reset Password: Setup Access Setup: Modify Setup Items Create Setup Items Create Setup Items Allow Open Object of User Fields Access User Field So	CRM CRM	ts Financia						ed Permiss	ons					

6. If you require multiple different **Security Roles** to apply to various **Security Groups**, you can create **"Other**"-type **Security Roles** with different sets of Permissions.

(Review Security Setup > Roles (Security Permissions) > Create Security Roles in the EventPro User Manual.)

a. As you create each **Security Role**, ensure that you select the relevant **Active Directory Group(s)** from the dropdown.

The **Active Directory Groups** field in the **Security Role edit form** is only visible if you are working with Active Directory Integration, *i.e.* you own the EventPro Active Directory Integration module.

The Active Directory Groups field allows you to map the EventPro Security Role to selected Active Directory Groups, which ensures that Users are automatically assigned the correct permissions in EventPro, based on their Active Directory Group membership.

b. Adjust the specific permissions for the role, as required.

(Review Security Setup > Roles > Create Security Roles > Permissions in the EventPro User Manual.)

c. When you are done creating the Security Role, click **Save and Close** in the edit form.

5	3 🗎 🖂 😋					Security - EventPro				—		
	Home Vie											
up	<	🔒 Security 🛛 🗙										
Eve	200	e 🖪 🔮 🤊				Sales - Security Role						×
Eve	Home											^
Virtu				I	ABC X		(õõ 🕥 🕛	×			
Jsei	New Clone	Save Save and	Save and New S	ave and Cancel	Check Delete	Open Related	Refresh Audit	Find Previous Next Reco	_			
1od		Close		Clone	Spelling	Record	Log	Record	_			
eq.	Records Creation		Save		Edit	Open Related Record	View	Records Navigation	Close			
eci	🧐 Role											
	Name:	Sales										
	Active Directory Gr	oups: Sales									*	
	Role Type:	Accountin	-								*	
		Developm	ent								_	
	凝 Users 🔒 Bas	c Perm 🗹 Sales										
Í	ở Setup/Security	Support										
ľ										ок с	ancel	h.
	Main	-										
	Access CRM:	N	lone								-	
	Allow Open Obje	ct on CRM Items: V	iew								-	
	Companies Com	tacts Leads Opp	a de unidia a									
			ortunities									
		None									-	
-		Allow Assigned Only									*	
1y	Create Leads:										-	
v	Delete Leads:	Allow Assigned Only									-	
_0												
CR												

- d. The role will be added to the **Setup > Security > Roles** selection grid.
- 7. After you have completed all the administrative work required, you can allow the other Users to log into EventPro. See <u>First User Login to EventPro</u> 229.

User First Login to EventPro

After you have configured Active Directory and EventPro as described above, your organization's Users should simply need to log into their workstations with their Windows accounts, and run EventPro.

EventPro will create a new "Named"-type User for each Active Directory User that runs EventPro for the first time, up to the maximum number of Named users allowed by your software license.

When "Named" user accounts are used up, EventPro will then create "Concurrent"-type users, if allowed by your software license.

If the maximum number of Concurrent users are already logged in when a new individual attempts to run EventPro for the first time, EventPro will create the new User, but not allow him/her to log in while all Concurrent spaces are being used.

1. When EventPro opens, the User can click **My Details** under **My Workplace** in the left navigation pane to view his/her EventPro **Security User** record.

0 ≧ ≅ @ @	00日時り・	PDelany@MyVMD.local - Security User - E	ventPro	– 🗆 X
Home View	w Tools			^
	ABC Arge My Reset Add Note Check Spelling Edit PDelany@MyVMD.local ×	Open Related Record Refresh Audi Log Open Related Record View	t Find Previous NextRecord Close	
My Details				
Task Calendar	Juser Named User Type: Named Account:* Delany, Pearl User Name:* PDelany@MyVMD.local		Refresh Data On Tab Switch	nnet Settings
🏠 My Workplace	User Code:* PDelany@MyVMD.local Change Password On First Logon		Open In Existing Tab (faster): I Default Print Destination: Close Report Preview When Printed	Unspecified
📌 Events	Inactive Definition Font Color:		Exit Email Recipient Selection On Double Click	0 \$
Lodging CRM/Sales	Back Color: Azure Azure			Default ~
○ Communications				8:00 AM 9:00 AM
🖻 Tasks			Use Legacy Skins	
Finance	🧐 Security Roles 🛛 🖉 User Groups 🖂 Email Accounts	Trace Log		
Reports	■ 2 0 0 0 0			
🌯 Mail Merge	Name Sales			A
↓ [↑] Import/Export				
Oashboards				
ž i 🖄 ••••				
User: PDelany@MyVMD.local				

- 2. The EventPro User Name will be the same as the User's Active Directory User Logon Name.
- 3. Under **Security Roles**, the User will already be assigned the role determined by the Active Directory Security Group to which the User belongs.
- 4. In the **Account** field, an EventPro **Contact** has been created for the User, pulling the details from the User's Active Directory properties.

If you set the Default Account to your internal Company (<u>see above</u> 25)), the Contact will be linked to the **Company**, and the User's Active Directory **Job Title** will appear as the Contact's company **Position**.

5. The User's Security User details and Contact information can be edited in EventPro, as required.

However, note that there are some limits to what you can edit in EventPro when using Active Directory Integration. Some changes need to be made back in Active Directory. See <u>Active Directory/EventPro Sync</u> 230 below.

6. Installation is complete and EventPro is now ready to use.

Active Directory/EventPro Sync

When using EventPro Active Directory Integration, the **EventPro Users** will sync to Active Directory. In other words, each time a User logs into EventPro, EventPro will check specified fields in the User's Active Directory properties, as noted in <u>Create Active Directory Groups for Integration</u> [163], above:

- First Name
- Last Name
- Email Address
- Address Information
- Telephone Number
- Job Title

• Security Roles (based on the User's Active Directory Security Group membership)

If you edit those fields in EventPro, they will be overwritten by Active Directory the next time the User logs into EventPro. Changes you make in EventPro are not pushed to Active Directory.

To edit any of that information for an EventPro User, you need to edit the User back in Active Directory.

- The first six fields described (First Name, Last Name, Email Address, Address Information, Telephone Number, and Job Title) are simply edited in the User's **Properties** in Active Directory.
- To change the User's EventPro **Security Role**, you need to change the Active Directory Security Groups to which the User belongs. The User will need to log off and log back onto the workstation before any Active Directory changes will take effect in EventPro.

If you edit a User in Active Directory, EventPro should still recognize and match up the Active Directory User with the correct EventPro User, since it checks three values:

- Windows User Name
- Active Directory ID
- Email Address (in EventPro, the Contact's email address)

However, if you change all three of those values for a User in Active Directory, EventPro will not recognize the User when he/she logs in, and will create a new User.

Network Install: SQL Authentication

- This type of EventPro network installation requires knowledge of SQL Server. Your organization's EventPro installation should be done by an IT Specialist who has sufficient technical knowledge and is familiar with your organization's computer network. If you do not have in-house IT to assist you with EventPro installation, the instructions below will guide you through the general process, but if you have any doubts about how to proceed, please contact EventPro Support.
- These instructions only cover one standard set of options that typically work under normal circumstances. For more options, you will require assistance from an IT specialist who is familiar with your organization's network.
- Note that these instructions describe the installation of the base EventPro application. You may have purchased
 additional modules that also require installation. Unless otherwise advised, you should download all of the software
 components available to you, and consult with your Support or Training Specialist for assistance with installation.
- Installation Instructions:
 - 1. Download EventPro Components 232
 - 2. Install SQL Server 234
 - 3. Configure SQL Server 238
 - 4. Create SQL User 241
 - 5. Install Data Updater 245
 - 6. <u>Create New Client Database</u> 248
 - 7. <u>Restore Existing Database over New</u> 250
 - 8. Change SQL User 257
 - 9. Install EventPro to Server 260
 - 10. Share Installation Folder 265
 - 11. Install EventPro to Workstations 265
 - 12. Admin First Login to EventPro 271

13. User First Login to EventPro 278

- In this sample installation process, we follow a particular sequence of steps to prepare your EventPro database. We run
 the EventPro Database Utility Wizard to create two databases: EventProMaster, a required database that controls
 program licensing, and a named database, typically called EventProData, which is initially blank. This new, blank
 EventProData database is essentially just a "placeholder" database. You have most likely received and saved a backup
 of an existing, prepared database from your EventPro Training or Support Specialist. We will restore that existing,
 prepared EventPro database backup over the blank "placeholder" database, so that EventProData will then contain your
 existing information. Installing EventPro Software will occur later in the process.
- Note that there is another slightly different sequence of steps that you can follow after installing the Data Updater. You can consult with your IT department and/or EventPro Support or Training Specialist to determine which sequence to follow. In this alternate process, after installing the Data Updater, you first restore the backup of the existing, prepared EventPro database, typically naming it EventProData. You then install EventPro Software to add the EventProMaster database, although you do not yet run the EventPro program. You then run the Database Utility Wizard to link the client database to the EventProMaster database ("Create Master Database Client ID"). There will then be several other steps to complete before running EventPro. For more details about this process, see <u>Alternate Database Restore</u> <u>Process</u> [280].

Download EventPro Components

- 1. Log on to the **Application Server**.
- 2. Proceed to the **EventPro website** and login to the **Client Login area** with your 6-digit license **User ID**.
- 3. Go to the **Downloads** area.

Home My Account Download	Event Pro '		00
🏠 Home 🥻 My Account 👗 Download 🔹			
	🌞 What's New	🍰 Upload File	👔 Manual 🛛 🔀 My Prefere
Downloads			
- this link to access your cloud portal: Cloud Login			
ou need the Citrix Workspace app: Click here			
view/Accept the EventPro Software Program License Ag	greement and	download your licen	sed applications.
ou must accept the binding License Agreement before downloading.			
am authorized to accept Software License Agreements on behalf of Corporate Inc.	with Client ID 00000	and I accept the EventPro Softw	are Program License Agreement
ise download and review the license agreement. Get License Agreem	pent		
ise download and review the license agreement. Get License Agreem	nent		
Click File Name	Size	Date	Description
	Size	Date (B 10-May-2019 01:53 PM	Description *Required*
Click File Name	Size	(B 10-May-2019 01:53 PM	· ·
Click File Name Download file EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Size 146,187	(B 10-May-2019 01:53 PM (B 10-May-2019 01:54 PM	*Required*
Click File Name Download file EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Size 146,1871 143,5751	 B 10-May-2019 01:53 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:54 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:55 PM 	*Required* EventPro Connect Setup
Click File Name Download file EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Size 146,187/ 143,575/ 115,107/	 B 10-May-2019 01:53 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:54 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:55 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:58 PM 	*Required* EventPro Connect Setup EventPro VirtualAssistant Setup
Click File Name Download file EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.Connect.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Size 146,1871 143,5751 115,1071 126,7741 113,9771	 B 10-May-2019 01:53 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:54 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:55 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:58 PM 	*Required* EventPro Connect Setup EventPro VirtualAssistant Setup EventPro Api
Click File Name Download file EventPro.Win.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.VirtualAssistant.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe Download file EventPro.Api.Setup.19.1.2.0.exe	Size 146,1871 143,5751 115,1071 126,7741 113,9771	 B 10-May-2019 01:53 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:54 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:55 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:58 PM CB 10-May-2019 01:57 PM 	*Required* EventPro Connect Setup EventPro VirtualAssistant Setup EventPro Api License Updater/Database Tool

- 4. If you haven't already, **download all of the EventPro components** that you see in the **Downloads** grid.
 - a. The components you see in your **Downloads** grid represent the EventPro application and modules that you have purchased, so your screen may look different than the example screenshot.
 - b. The installation instructions below will describe the main components required for the core EventPro program: EventPro (EventPro.Win.Setup.exe), EventPro License Updater/Database Tool (EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.exe), and EventPro Licence (Licence.ini).

However, depending on your purchase, you may have additional components to download.

Download all components that you see, and if you have any questions about installing additional components or modules, contact your Support or Training Specialist.

c. Note that you will need to accept the License Agreement before you can download files.

If you want to review the content of the License Agreement, click the **Get License Agreement** button to retrieve the agreement in .RTF format. This is the same License Agreement that must be agreed to during EventPro installation.

5. While downloading the files, take note of the folder to which you save these files so that you can later retrieve them.

Do not open or run the files yet. The instructions below will inform you when you need each file.

6. First, proceed to Install SQL Server 234.

Install SQL Server

EventPro Software uses **SQL databases**, meaning you will need to install **SQL Server** to your database server, if it is not installed already.

You can buy an edition of SQL Server, or download the free edition, SQL Server Express, from the Microsoft website.

- 1. Download the SQL Server installation file to your database server, and run the installer.
- 2. Follow the installation documentation provided with your edition of SQL Server.
 - a. The instructions below will simply note the critical settings for SQL Server when used for EventPro Software.
 - b. The screenshots below demonstrate **SQL Server Express**, although regardless of which edition you use, the **important settings** will be the same.
 - c. There are other settings and options in the installation process that these instructions will not describe, as they will vary, depending on the IT needs of your organization. Please consult with your IT Department for further guidance on installing and configuring SQL Server.

3. Feature Selection:

- a. You should select the checkboxes for:
 - i. Database Engine Services
 - ii. Client Tools Connectivity
 - iii. Client Tools Backward Compatibility
- b. Depending on the edition of SQL Server you are installing, there may be a checkbox for **Management Tools**; if so, select that checkbox, as well.

If there isn't a Management Tools option in the edition you are installing, you can download and install **SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS)** after installing SQL Server.

- c. Whether you select the other Feature checkboxes is up to your IT department.
- d. The **default directories** are typically fine as they are, unless your IT department says otherwise.

📸 SQL Server Installation Center			– 🗆 X .	
🃸 SQL Server 2017 Setup			- 0	\times
Feature Selection Select the Express features to in	nstall.			
License Terms Global Rules	Looking for Reporting Service	es? <u>Download it from</u>	the web	
Microsoft Update	Features:		Feature description:	
Product Updates Install Setup Files Install Rules Feature Selection Feature Rules Instance Configuration Server Configuration Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules Installation Progress Complete	Instance Features Database Engine Services SQL Server Replication R Python Full-Text and Semanti PolyBase Query Service Shared Features Client Tools Connectivity Client Tools SDK SQL Client Connectivity S LocalDB Redistributable Features	vices (In-Database) c Extractions for Search e for External Data ompatibility	The configuration and operation of each instan feature of a SQL Server instance is isolated from other SQL Server instances. SQL Server instance can operate side-by-side on the same compute Prerequisites for selected features: Already installed: Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributable Windows PowerShell 3.0 or higher Microsoft .NET Framework 4.6 Disk Space Requirements Drive C: 1195 MB required, 321866 MB available	1 5 if. v
	Select All Unselect All			
	Instance root directory:	C:\Program Files\Micr	osoft SQL Server\ .	
	Shared feature directory:	C:\Program Files\Micr	osoft SQL Server\	
	Shared feature directory (x86):	C:\Program Files (x86)	\Microsoft SQL Server\	
			< Back Next > Canc	el .

4. Instance Configuration:

- a. Select the radio button next to "Named Instance".
- b. You can leave the **Named Instance** and **Instance ID** as **SQLEXPRESS**, unless there is another name you prefer to use.
- c. The **Installed Instances** grid at the bottom of this page would display any instances already installed. If there is already an installed instance, check with your IT Department whether you should use that instance.

🃸 SQL Server Installation Center				_		
髋 SQL Server 2017 Setup					— C	X
Instance Configuration Specify the name and instance		QL Server, Instance ID bea	comes part of the inst	allation path.		
License Terms Global Rules Microsoft Update	 Default instance Named instance: 	SQLEXPRESS				
Product Updates Install Setup Files Install Rules Feature Selection	Instance ID:	SQLEXPRESS				
Feature Rules Instance Configuration Server Configuration	SQL Server directory:	C:\Program Files\Micro	soft SQL Server\MSSQ	L14.SQLEXPRESS		
Database Engine Configuration Feature Configuration Rules Installation Progress Complete	Instance Name	Instance ID	Features	Edition	Version	1
			<	Back Next	> C	ancel

5. Server Configuration:

- a. The Startup Type for both SQL Server Database Engine and SQL Server Browser must be set to Automatic.
- b. If not done already, switch the SQL Server Browser Start Type to Automatic.

Install Setup Files Install Rules SQL Server Database Engine NT Service\MSSQL\$SQLEXPRESS Ac SQL Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Ar Feature Selection Comparison Professor Comparison Profess		
Silobal Rules Microsoft Update Microsoft Update Microsoft recommends that you use a separate account for each SQL Server service. Service Account Name Password Service SQL Server Database Engine NT Service\MSSQLSSQLEXPRESS Account Name SQL Server Database Engine NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Account Name Service GC Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Account Name Service Grant Perform Volume Maintenance Task privilege to SQL Server Database Engine Service Didit disclosure by allowing deleted content to be accessed. Didit disclosure by allowing deleted content to be accessed. Seture Configuration reactor Configuration Reless Click here for details Click here for details Service for details		
Microsoft Update Microsoft recommends that you use a separate account for each SQL Server service. Microsoft Updates Service Account Name Password S Install Setup Files SQL Server Database Engine NT Service\MSSQLSSQLEXPRESS And Install Rules SQL Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE And Install Rules Grant Perform Volume Maintenance Task privilege to SQL Server Database Engine Service Did Instance Configuration This privilege enables instant file initialization by avoiding zeroing of data pages. This may lead to inf Microsoft update Installation Progress Click here for details Click here for details		
Service Account Name Password S Install Setup Files SQL Server Database Engine NT Service\MSSQLSSQLEXPRESS Account Name Install Rules SQL Server Database Engine NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Account Name Install Rules SQL Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Account Name Install Rules SQL Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Account Name Install Rules Grant Perform Volume Maintenance Task privilege to SQL Server Database Engine Service Image: Market Account Name Market Account Name Install Rules Grant Perform Volume Maintenance Task privilege to SQL Server Database Engine Service Image: Market Account Name Image: Market Account Name Install Rules This privilege enables instant file initialization by avoiding zeroing of data pages. This may lead to inf Image: Market Account Name Image: Market Account Name Installation Progress Click here for details Image: Market Account Name Image: Market Account Name Image: Market Account Name		
SQL Server Database Engine NT Service\MSSQL\$SQLEXPRESS Au Install Setup Files SQL Server Database Engine NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Au SQL Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Au SQL Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE Au Image: Section Image: Section Image: Section Image: Section Au Image: Section Image: Section Image: Section Image: Section Au Image: Section Image: Section <td< td=""><td>Startup Type</td><td></td></td<>	Startup Type	
Install Rules SQL Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE A Install Rules SQL Server Browser NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE A Install Rules Grant Perform Volume Maintenance Task privilege to SQL Server Database Engine Service Distance Configuration Install Rules This privilege enables instant file initialization by avoiding zeroing of data pages. This may lead to inf Install Rules Click here for details Installation Progress Setallation Progress	Automatic	
eature Selection Ar eature Rules Grant Perform Volume Maintenance Task privilege to SQL Server Database Engine Service Di stance Configuration This privilege enables instant file initialization by avoiding zeroing of data pages. This may lead to inf disclosure by allowing deleted content to be accessed. eature Configuration Click here for details stallation Progress Stallation Progress	Automatic	
ature Rules Grant Perform Volume Maintenance Task privilege to SQL Server Database Engine Service stance Configuration This privilege enables instant file initialization by avoiding zeroing of data pages. This may lead to inf atabase Engine Configuration Click here for details ature Configuration Rules Stallation Progress	Automatic	
stance Configuration This privilege enables instant file initialization by avoiding zeroing of data pages. This may lead to infect disclosure by allowing deleted content to be accessed. atabase Engine Configuration Click here for details stallation Progress Stallation Progress	Disabled Manual	
erver Configuration disclosure by allowing deleted content to be accessed. atabase Engine Configuration Click here for details ature Configuration Rules stallation Progress		_
tabase Engine Configuration Click here for details ature Configuration Rules		
stallation Progress		
stallation Progress		
omplete		

6. Database Engine Configuration:

- a. Under the **Account Provisioning** tab, indicate which **Authentication Mode** the administrator will use to access the Database Engine: **Windows Authentication** or **Mixed Mode** (SQL Server Authentication and Windows Authentication).
 - i. Windows Authentication: You will connect to SQL Server using Windows Authentication.
 - ii. **Mixed Mode** (SQL Server Authentication and Windows Authentication): You will connect to SQL Server using Windows Authentication or SQL Server Authentication.

If you select **Mixed Mode** here, you need to enter a **Password** for the **SQL Server system administrator** (**sa**) account. If you later connect to SQL Server using SQL Server Authentication, you will need these **sa** credentials.

b. Also, under the Specify SQL Sever Administrators grid, click the Add Current User button.

SQL Server 2017 Setup	C	ı ×
Database Engine Con	figuration	
Specify Database Engine auth	nentication security mode, administrators, data directories and TempDB settings.	
icense Terms	Server Configuration Data Directories TempDB User Instances FILESTREAM	
ilobal Rules Aicrosoft Update	Specify the authentication mode and administrators for the Database Engine.	
roduct Updates	Authentication Mode	
stall Setup Files	Windows authentication mode	
nstall Rules	O Mixed Mode (SQL Server authentication and Windows authentication)	
eature Selection	Specify the password for the SQL Server system administrator (sa) account.	
eature Rules Istance Configuration		
erver Configuration	Enter password:	
atabase Engine Configuration	Confirm password:	
eature Configuration Rules	Specify SQL Server administrators	
nstallation Progress	PSI/Sample (Sample) SOL Server administrators ha	ve
omplete	unrestricted access to the Database Engine.	
	Add Current User Add Remove	
	< Back Next > Ca	ancel

- 7. Complete the rest of the installation process as recommended by your IT Department.
- As noted above, if there isn't a Management Tools option in the edition you are installing, you can download and install SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) after installing SQL Server. There may be a prompt to Install SSMS at the end of the SQL Server Installer, or you can download SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS) from the Microsoft website.
- 9. It is recommended that you **restart** your computer once SQL Server is installed. If you install SQL Server Management Studio separately, you will be prompted to restart your computer at the end of the installation process.
- 10. You can then proceed to **<u>Configure SQL Server</u>** 238.

Configure SQL Server

- 1. After restarting the computer, open the Start menu, and go to SQL Server Configuration Manager.
- 2. The SQL Server Configuration Manager opens.
 - a. In the left-hand panel, go to **SQL Server Network Configuration > Protocols for SQLEXPRESS** (or whatever you named the SQL Server Instance <u>earlier</u> [235]).
 - b. In the right-hand selection grid, you need to enable TCP/IP and Named Pipes.
 - c. Right-click **TCP/IP** and select **Enable**.



d. The **Warning** dialog informs you that changes will not take effect until the service is restarted, which we will do next.

🚪 Sql Server Configuration Manager				_	\times
File Action View Help					
🗢 🄿 🔰 📓 🗟 🛛					
 SQL Server Configuration Manager SQL Server Services SQL Server Network Configurati SQL Native Client 11.0 Configur Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configurati 	on (32bit) ation (32bit)	Protocol Name Shared Memory Named Pipes	Status Enabled Enabled Disabled		
Reprotocols for SQLEXPRESS					
 ✓ .豊. SQL Native Client 11.0 Configur. ■, Client Protocols ■, Aliases 	Warning Any change	:s made will be saved; ho the service is stopped ar	wever, they will not take nd restarted.	×	
			ОК		

- e. Click **OK**, and you will see that **TCP/IP** is now **Enabled**.
- f. Now, if necessary, repeat the process with **Named Pipes**. Right-click **Named Pipes** and select **Enable**. Click **OK** in the **Warning** dialog that follows.

g. Both TCP/IP and Named Pipes should now be Enabled.

If applicable, you may also want to check the Protocols under SQL Native Client Configuration and SQL Native Client Configuration (32bit) to ensure that **TCP/IP** and **Named Pipes** are **Enabled** there, as well.

Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager (Local) SQL Server Services SQL Server Service Configuration (32bit) SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) Image: Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configuration Image: Client Protocols SQL Server Network Configuration Image: Client Protocols SQL Server Network Configuration Image: Client Protocols Image: Client Protocols Aliases	- □ Protocol Name Status Shared Memory Enabled Named Pipes Enabled TCP//P Enabled Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action View Help ← ⇒ 201 @ 201 SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) ঊ SQL Server Services ঊ SQL Server Services	- □ Name Order Enabled 3 Shared Memory 1 Enabled	1 X		
		Image: TCCP/IP 2 Enabled Image: TCCP/IP 3 Enabled Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager File Action File Action View Help Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Configuration Manager (Local) Image: Sql Server Network Configuration (32bit) Image: Sql Server Network Configuration (32bit) Image: Sql Server Network Configuration Image: Client Protocols Image: Aliases Image: Sql Server Network Configuration Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Network Configuration Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Network Configuration Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Network Configuration Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services Image: Sql Server Services I	Name Shared Memory TCP/IP Named Pipes	Order 1 2 3	- C X

3. In the left-hand panel, go to SQL Server Configuration Manager (local) > SQL Server Services.

In the selection grid to the right, select **SQL Server (SQLEXPRESS)** and click the **Restart** button **(e)** above. The service will stop and restart.

🚟 Sql Server Configuration Manager					-	
File Action View Help						
= 🔷 🖄 🗟 📓 🕑 🔍 💿 📀						
SQL Server Configuration Manager (Local) Restar	t service	State	Start Mode	Log On As	Process ID	Service Type
 SQL Server Services SQL Server Network Configuration (32bit) SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration (32bit) Client Protocols Aliases SQL Server Network Configuration Protocols for SQLEXPRESS SQL Native Client 11.0 Configuration Client Protocols Aliases 	SQL Server (SQLEXPRESS) SQL Server Agent (SQLEXPRESS) SQL Server Browser	Running Stopped Running	Automatic Other (Boot, Sys Automatic	NT Service\MSSQLESSQLESSQLESS NT AUTHORITY\NETWORKSERVICE NT AUTHORITY\LOCALSERVICE	2652 0 4732	SQL Server SQL Agent
	<					

4. Check to ensure that the SQL Server Browser is Running.

If it is not, you can try to start it by clicking the **Start** button above. This may not work, however, as there could be other reasons that the SQL Server Browser is not running. For example, you may need to go to the **Services** area to manually enable it there.

If you run into any issues here or any other part of SQL Server Configuration, please contact **Support** for assistance.

- 5. You can close the SQL Server Configuration Manager window.
- 6. Next, proceed to Create SQL User 241.

Create SQL User

As a security best practice in an SQL environment, we recommend that the User who performs EventPro installation should have the minimum security rights possible.

It is highly recommended that you **do not** install the EventPro as the **SQL Server system administrator** (**sa**), since sa security rights are excessive for that purpose.

Therefore, we recommend creating a new SQL User for the purposes of creating EventPro databases and installing EventPro to the server and workstations.

- 1. Run SQL Server Management Studio.
- 2. Connect to Server:
 - a. Server Type: Leave as Database Engine.
 - b. **Server Name**: Ensure that the correct **Server name** is selected (Network Computer Name\Named Instance, *e.g.* MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS).
 - c. Authentication: Choose whether you are connecting to SQL Server using Windows Authentication or SQL Server Authentication. If you are connecting with SQL Server Authentication, enter the User Name and Password (*i.e.* the sa credentials).

(Remember that earlier, when <u>installing SQL Server</u>²³⁷), you chose between **Windows Authentication** and **Mixed Mode (Windows Authentication and SQL Server Authentication)**, and set the password for the **sa** account.)

d. Click Connect.



- 3. In the **Object Explorer** panel of **SQL Server Management Studio**, go to **Security > Logins**.
- 4. Right-click the **Logins** folder and select **New Login**.

	ject Tools Window Help 😋 🔛 🗳 🗊 New Query 💡	9 ● & & @ @ ? ? ? . ? . ? . ? . ? . ? . ? . ? . ?	P = □ × √ □ ≠ ÷;
Object Explorer Connect → # ×# ■ P • MYDBSERVER\SQLE • Databases • Cogins • Cogins • Cogins • Server • Server • Server Ob • Server Ob • PolyBase • Management • XEvent Profiler	► I S EXPRESS (SQL Server 14.0.1000 - P New Login Filter • Start PowerShell Reports • Refresh	×	

- 5. The Login New form appears.
- 6. Select the radio button next to **SQL Server Authentication**, since you want **Users** to connect to the SQL Server Instance using **SQL Server Authentication**
- 7. Enter a Login name. In the example, we have used the name "User1".
- 8. Enter a **Password** and **Confirm** the password for User1.
- 9. Unselect the checkbox next to User Must Change Password at Next Login.

🛃 M File E	icrosoft SOL Server Management	Studio			Quick Launch (Ct	rl+Q)	<u></u> -	x
6 G -	Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😯 Help] • 📮	
Object E Connec	- Securables	Login name: O Windows authentication (C) SQL Server authentication Password:	User1			Search		
		Confirm password:	•••••					
+		Old password: Enforce password policy Enforce password expira User must change password	tion					
	. .	Mapped to certificate			\sim			
÷	Connection Server:	Mapped to asymmetric key Map to Credential			~			
	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS Connection: MyVMD\administrator Y View connection properties	Mapped Credentials	Credential	Provider	~	Add		
	Progress					Remove		
	Ready	Default database: Default language:	master <default></default>		~			
<					ОК	Cancel		
🗇 Read	y							

- 10. In the left-hand Select a Page panel, click Server Roles.
- 11. In the **Server Roles** page, select the checkbox next to **dbcreator**. This gives User1 the security privileges to create the EventPro databases.

🛃 м	crosoft SOL Server Management	Studio	Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	ç	_	×
File E	E		- 0	×		
G -	Select a page	🖵 Script 🔻 😮 Help]	• -	
Object E		Server role is used to grant server-wide security privileges to a user.				
	F	Server roles: bulkadmin dbcreator diskadmin				
		processadmin public securityadmin serveradmin setupadmin sysadmin setupadmin				
+ +	Connection					
±	Server: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS					
	Connection: MyVMD\administrator					
	Progress Ready					
<			OK Car	ncel		
Read	y					

- 12. Click **OK** to save the User1 login.
- 13. Close SQL Server Management Studio.
- 14. You can now proceed to Install Data Updater 245.

Install Data Updater

- 1. Navigate to the downloaded EventPro.EPDataUpdater.Setup.exe and double-click to run it.
- 2. The installation wizard will begin. Click Next to continue.



3. Select Installation Folder:

- a. If you don't want to use the default path, you can enter a different folder path.
- b. Click Next.



4. In the next window, click **Install**.

🕾 EventPro Data Updater Setup 🛛 🗙	
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro Data Updater installation	
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, dick "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.	
Advanced Installer	

You may encounter a security warning, for which you may need to click Yes or OK.

5. When the installation completes, click **Finish** in the final window.



6. Next, go to <u>Create New Client Database</u> 248.

Create New Client Database

In most cases, an existing database will be prepared for you, containing information that has been converted from a previous database or added under the guidance of your EventPro Training & Implementation Specialist. That database will be sent to you so that you can restore it.

Before restoring the database, however, this process requires that you first **create a new database** with the EventPro Database Utility. The new database you are creating here is essentially a **placeholder**. Later, you will restore your existing database over this new "placeholder" database.

- 1. Run the **EventPro Database Utility Wizard** by selecting **EventPro Data Updater** from your **Start** Menu, or doubleclicking the **EventPro Data Updater application file** in the folder to which you installed it.
- 2. On the first page of the wizard, select Create a New Client Database, and click Next.



3. **Target Database**: Enter the target database information.
EventPro Database Utility

Target Database

Enter the target database information.

Database Type	MS-SQL	•
Server	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	۲
Authentication		
User name	User 1	
Password	•••••	
Database	EventProData	•
Settings		
Client I.D.	000000	
Cloud Data		
Database Data Type	Blank	•
License File	C:\EventPro\Licence.ini	

- a. Database Type: Choose MS-SQL.
- b. Server: Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when <u>installing SQL Server [235]</u> (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS").

It will look something like this: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS

- c. Authentication: Select the Authentication checkbox, which indicates that User will use SQL Authentication to connect to the SQL Server instance.
- d. Enter the User Name and Password of User1 (which you created <u>above</u> 241).
- e. **Database**: Type in (*don't select from the drop-down*) the name of the new database you are creating, *e.g.* **EventProData**.

The Data Updater will create 2 databases:

- i. This named database (*i.e.* EventProData), over which you will later restore the existing, prepared database from your Training or Support Specialist.
- ii. An EventProMaster database to control licensing.
- f. Client I.D.: Typically, you would use your six-digit License ID for the Client I.D.
- g. Cloud Data: Leave this unselected, as you are performing a Network Install of EventPro.
- h. Database Data Type: From the drop-down list, choose Blank or Standard.

×

i. **Standard** means the database will be populated with some basic default data, namely Statuses, Titles, Communication References, Booth Types, Budget Types, Payment Types, Location Features, and Location Setup Types.

Clients typically choose **Standard**, as they find it easier than starting from a completely blank database that has no frame of reference. The pre-entered status, titles, *etc*. can easily be edited to suit your organization's terminology.

ii. **Blank** means a completely blank database, with no pre-entered data.

If you are planning to restore an existing database over this new database, it doesn't really matter which data type you select.

- i. **License File**: Click the ellipsis (...) and browse to your license file (Licence.ini). This is the license file you downloaded earlier 233.
- j. When you have entered all of the target database information, click Next.
- 4. In the last page of the wizard, click **Finish**.
- 5. You can now proceed to **<u>Restore Existing Database over New</u>** 2501.

Restore Existing Database over New

In most cases, an EventPro Training or Support Specialist will provide you with a **database** that has been converted from a previous database and/or filled with information that you have provided.

You need to restore that database to the SQL Server before proceeding with EventPro installation.

With this process, you will be restoring the existing database **over** the new "**placeholder**" database you just created in the previous step.

Typically, the database is sent as a .BAK file, which you can restore in SQL Server Management Studio (SSMS).

Ensure that the existing database is stored on the same machine as SQL Server.

1. Run SQL Server Management Studio.

You may have a different version of SQL Server Management Studio than that depicted below, but the functions and settings should be essentially the same.

2. Connect to Server:

Although you created the database as User1, you can restore the database as the Windows Administrator User or the sa user.

- a. Ensure that the correct **Server name** is selected (Network Computer Name\Named Instance, *e.g.* MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS).
- b. Choose the Authentication Mode: Windows Authentication or SQL Server Authentication. If applicable, enter the SQL Server Authentication Login and Password.

(Remember that you specified the Authentication Mode when <u>Installing SQL Server</u> 237) earlier.)

c. Click Connect.



3. In the **Object Explorer** panel of **Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio**, expand the Databases so that you can see **EventProData**.

Right-click on EventProData, and select Tasks > Restore > Database.

	r Management Studio		Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	×
	🖌 🏜 📲 🌗 🗿 New Query	elp ● ゐ ゐ ጪ ☆ ┃ よ □ お ? - < - 図 ♬ ■ ✓ ೫ ◎ ⊟ ೫ ೫ ഈ 過 爾 ฌ ∃ ≇ ऱ	• 😡 🌶 🖨 🗩 - 🖕	
Object Explorer Connect ▼ ¥ ¥ ■ ■ ■ MYDBSERVER\SQLE ■ Databases # ■ Databases # ■ Database St # ■ Database St # ■ EventProD # ■ EventProV # ■ Security # ■ Security # ■ Security	XPRESS (SQL Server 14.0 abases napshots New Database New Query			
	Tasks Policies Facets Start PowerShell Azure Data Studio Reports Rename Delete Refresh	Vulnerability Assessment		
< ✓ Ready	Properties	Back Up Restore Generate Scripts Extract Data-tier Application Deploy Database to Microsoft Azure SQL Database Export Data-tier Application Upgrade Data-tier Application Import Flat File Import Data Export Data Export Data	Database Files and Filegroups Transaction Log	

- 4. The **Restore Database** window appears.
- 5. Under **Source**, select **Device**, and click the ellipsis next to the field.
 - a. The Select Backup Devices form appears.

R 1	🕵 R	estore Database - EventProDa	ta			_		×	□ ×
File	🐼 No	backupset selected to be restore	ed.						
6 G	Select Ge File		🗊 Script 👻 😯 Help						₽≞₽
Object Conne	P Op		Source O Database:] [~	
			Database: Destination					~	
÷			Database: Restore to:	EventProData			Timeline	~	
±		🗯 Select backup devices				- 0	×		
± ±		Specify the backup media and	l its location for your restore opera	ation.				t LSN	
		Backup media type:	File		~				
		Backup media:					_		
						Add			
	Conn								
	¥₩ F [i					Contents			
	<u>View</u>								
	Progr							>	
	0							dia	
					OK Cancel	Help		p	
🗇 Rea	dv								

b. Click the Add button. The Locate Backup File window appears.

R 1	Ŗ Restore Database - EventProData			- 🗆	×	×
File I	🔞 No backupset selected to be restored					
G ÷	Select a page & General # Files	🗊 Script 🕞 🛛 🖌 🕼			, e	i i i
Object Conne	✗ Options	Source Database:			~	
-	 Select backup devices Specify the backup media and its local 		_	×	~	
	Backup media type:	Fi 🛢 Locate Backup File - MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS		—		×
÷	Backup media:	Backup File location: C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro Software\Da	Ċ		5	ρ
*	view connection properties Progress Done Done	Image: Second	Backup File	s(*bak;*tm;*log)	
			ОК		Cancel	
🗖 Read	ду					

- c. In the **Locate Backup File** window, locate the existing database that your EventPro Trainer sent to you, which should have been saved on the same machine as SQL Server, as noted above.
- d. Click **OK** in the **Locate Backup File** window, and again in the **Specify Backup** window.
- 6. Back in the **Restore Database** form, under **Destination**, the **Database** should be set to **EventProData**.

. <mark></mark> N	💀 Restore Database - EventProDat	3	-		х		×
File	🐼 No backupset selected to be restore	ł.					_ !!
8 G •	Select a page	I Script → 3 Help				ع	<u> </u>
8 ⋕ 1	 General Files Options 	Source					
Conne		O Database:			~		
		Device:]			
		Database:			~		
		Destination					
		Database: EventProData			~		
		Restore to:		Timeline			
Œ		Restore plan					
+		Backup sets to restore:					
±		Restore Name Component Type Server Database Position First LSN Las	st LSN Ch	ieckpoint L	.SN		
+							
	Connection						
	HY MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample]						
	View connection properties						
	Progress						
	One Done	<	Verify Ba	ckup Media	a		
		ОК	Cancel	Help			
🗇 Rea	dy					-	

7. Ensure that you have selected the correct Source and Destination.

B B <th>Microsoft SQL S</th> <th>erver Management Stu</th> <th>udio</th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th>Qu</th> <th>iick Launch (</th> <th>Ctrl+Q)</th> <th>ρ-</th> <th></th>	Microsoft SQL S	erver Management Stu	udio					Qu	iick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	ρ-	
Select a page Select a page General Files Options Database: Database: Dotool Device: C/PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro Software\Data\000000_Sample.bak Database: Dotool Detabase: Database: Database: Database: Dotool Detabase: Dotool Detabase: Database: <	🛃 Restore D	atabase - EventProDat	ta								- 0	×
Seriel Script < () Help ✓ General Files ✓ Options O Database: ✓ Device: C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro Software\Data\000000_Sample.bak ✓ Database: 000000 Destination Database: Database: EventProData Restore to: The last backup taken (Tuesday, April 16, 2019 5:05:15 PM) Restore plan Backup sets to restore: Restore plan Backup sets to restore: Petore Name Connection V* V* MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample] Mew connection properties Fragress	Ready											
General Source Image: Pies Obtabase: Image: Options Database: Image: Options Device: Image: Options Timeline: Image: Options Timeline: <t< th=""><th>Select a page</th><th>•</th><th>🖸 Script 🕞</th><th>🕜 Hel</th><th>р</th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></t<>	Select a page	•	🖸 Script 🕞	🕜 Hel	р							
Y# MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample] View connection properties Progress	t & General Files Options		Source - Dat Destination Restore p Backup Restore	abase: vice: Database n ase: e to: lan sets to res	e: 0 E T store: Component	00000 iventProD he last ba	lata uckup taken (Tueso Server	day, April 16, 201 Database	9 5:05:15 PM) Position	First LSN		Last
Progress	₩ MYDBSER	VER\SQLEXPRESS ole]										
		n properties										
Verify Backup Med	ODDee Done		<							Ve	erify Backup N	> Nedia

8. In the left **Select a Page** panel, click on **Options**.

Select the first checkbox, **Overwrite the Existing Database (WITH REPLACE)**. (In this situation, we want the restored, prepared database from EventPro Training/Support to overwrite the blank "placeholder" database that we created in the previous step.)

- 🛃	Microsoft SQL Server Management	Studio		Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	ρ.	. 🗆	х
File	💀 Restore Database - EventProDa	ta		_	· 🗆	×	
ě C	Ready						÷
8 †	Select a page	🗊 Script 👻 😯 Help					
Obje Con	 General Files Options 	Restore options					
	E		settings (WITH KEEP_REPLICATION)	D \			
			estored database (WITH RESTRICTED_USE	к)			
		Recovery state:	RESTORE WITH RECOVERY		1000115	~	
	c.	Standby file:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se o use by rolling back uncommitted transactions				
	E	Leave the database ready to	o dae by rolling back directimitted transaction.	a. Additional transaction loga cani	for be reatored		
	G	Tail-Log backup					
	G	Take tail-log backup be					
	E	(WITH NORECO)	abase in the restoring state VERY)				
		Backup file:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Se	rver\MSSQL14.SQLEXPRESS\N	MSSQL\E		
		Server connections					
	Connection	Close existing connectio	ns to destination database				
	₩ WYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample]	Prompt Prompt before restoring	each backup e server property controls whether full-text inde	eves are imported, rebuilt, or reset	for the restore		
	View connection properties	database.		and any imported, repaire, or resor			
	Progress						
	Oone Done						
				OK Cancel	Help		
	eady						

- 9. Click **OK** at the bottom of the **Restore Database** dialog to begin the restore process.
- 10. When the restore is complete, you should receive a success dialog. Click OK.
- 11. You can now proceed to Change SQL User 257.

Change SQL User

1. Return to SQL Server Management Studio, once again ensuring that the Server Name is correct, and selecting Windows Authentication or SQL Server Authentication as appropriate.

Click Connect.

Image: Wicrosoft SQL Server Management Studio File Edit View Project Tools Window Image: Imag		米 ⊡ 台 ク・ペ・ 図 ♬ 22 23 副 副 品 国 注 34 王 王		ר ב זים בי≮ ק	∎ ×
Object Explorer Connect - ┆ ≻┆ ■ ▼ ♂ →		▼ ╄ ×			
	모 ^를 Connect to Server		×		
		SQL Server			
	Server type:	Database Engine	~		
	Server name:	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS	~		
	Authentication:	Windows Authentication	~		
	User name:	PSI\Sample	~		
	Password:				
		Remember password			
		Connect Cancel Help	Options >>		
🗇 Ready					

- 2. In the **Object Explorer** panel, expand the **Logins** folder.
- 3. Double-click **User1** to open its **Login Properties**.
- 4. Under **Server Roles**, unselect the **dbcreator** checkbox.

Kicrosoft SQL Server Management Studio				×	х
File Edit View Project Tools Window Select a page Select a p	Script - 2 Help	es to a user			
Object Explorer 	Server role is used to grant server-wide security privilege Server roles: bulkadmin dbcreator diskadmin processadmin securityadmin serveradmin setupadmin sysadmin	rs to a user.			
 NT SERVICE\SQLWriter NT SERVICE\Winmgmt MyVMD\administrator sa User1 Server Roles Credentials Credentials Server Audit Specifications Server Objects Replication PolyBase Management Keven Profiler 					
<>		ОК	Can	cel	
🗇 Ready					á

5. Under User Mapping, you can check to ensure that User1 has db_owner rights for both EventProData and EventProMaster.

This would have been set automatically during database creation.

Nicrosoft SQL Server Management Studio						×		x
File Edit View Project Tools Window Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page Image: Select a page: Select a p	Script	🕶 😯 Help						
🥬 User Mapping	Users ma	apped to this login:						
Object Explorer	Мар	Database	User	Default S	chema			
Connect 🕶 🍟 🎽 🝸 🖒 🥠		EventProData	User1	dbo				
Rever Mydbserver\squexpress(squespress)		Event Pro Master	User1	dbo				
🕀 🛑 Databases		master						
🖂 📕 Security		model						
🖃 💼 Logins		msdb						
🛃 ##MS_PolicyEventProcessing		tempdb						
🛃 ##MS_PolicyTsqlExecutionLc								
BUILTIN\Users								
NT AUTHORITY/SYSTEM								
NT Service\MSSQLSSQLEXPF NT SERVICE\SQLTELEMETRY								
NT SEDVICE\SOLWriter								
NT SERVICE\SOLUMINER	Gues	t account enabled for: Ev	cont Pro Dista					
MyVMD\administrator Server: MyDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS		Laccount enabled for. EV	rentrioData					
sa	Databas	e role membership for: Ev	entProData					
User1 Connection: MyVMD\administrator		iccessadmin						
🕀 💼 Server Roles		ackupoperator						
E Credentials		latareader latawriter						
🗉 📕 Audits		Idladmin						
🗉 💼 Server Audit Specifications	dbd	lenydatareader						
🕀 📕 Server Objects		lenydatawriter						
Replication Progress	db_0	wner ecurityadmin						
⊛ 🛑 PolyBase 💦 👘 Ready	os							
⊞ 🔚 Management								
XEvent Profiler								
				ОК		Cancel		
< >>				UK		ance	:	
☐ Ready								

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. You can now proceed to Install EventPro to Server 2001.

Install EventPro to Server

Because you are performing a **Network Installation**, this installation process must first be done from the **Application Server**.

1. Navigate to the **EventPro.Win.Setup.exe** you <u>downloaded earlier</u> [232], and double-click to run it.

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may receive a warning about installing software, and you may need to click **Run** or **OK** to continue the installation.

2. The installation wizard will begin. Click **Next** to continue.



3. End-User License Agreement:

- a. Please read the EventPro Software Program License Agreement.
- b. Select **I ACCEPT** or **I DO NOT ACCEPT** below. If you do not accept the license agreement, you cannot continue with the installation process.
- c. Click Next to continue.

🗟 EventPro Setup 🛛 🗙
End-User License Agreement
Please read the following license agreement carefully
^
EventPro Software Program License
Agreement
READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS AND CONDITIONS BEFORE INSTALLING THIS SOFTWARE. INSTALLATION OR USE INDICATES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THEM, PROMPTLY
• I accept the terms in the License Agreement
○ I <u>d</u> o not accept the terms in the License Agreement
Advanced Installer
< Back Next > Cancel

4. Installation Type: Choose Server Installation, and click Next.

(You can review Installation Types above, if necessary.)

EventPro Setup Installation Type Select the type of installation to perform.			×
 Stand Alone Installation Server Installation Workstation Installation 			
Advanced Installer ———————————————————————————————————	< Back	Next >	Cancel

5. Installation Options: Do not select the checkbox next to Use Active Directory to log into EventPro. (That option requires the EventPro Active Directory Module, and is covered under <u>Network Install: Active Directory Integration</u> 1621.)

Click Next.

EventPro Setup Installation Options These are options for running EventPro.	×
Use Active Directory to log into EventPro. (This requires a license that supports active directory.)	
Advanced Installer	Cancel

6. Select Installation Folder:

- a. You can use the default **Program Files** path or enter a different path for the **Installation Folder**.
- b. If you do enter a different folder path, **take note** of it, as you will need it again for the workstation installs.
- c. Click Next.

튨 EventPro Setup	—		×
Select Installation Folder		<	
This is the folder where EventPro will be installed.			
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, ent "Browse".	er it be	low or click	¢
Folder:			
C:\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro\		Browse	
Advanced Installer			
< Back Next >		Cano	el

- 7. SQL Database:
 - a. Server: Enter the SQL Server Named Instance, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when installing SQL Server (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS"). It will look something like this: MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS.
 - b. Authentication: Select the radio button next to SQL Authentication. Enter the Username and Password of the SQL User login you created earlier 24.
 - c. Click Next.

둸 EventPro Setup	×
SQL Database	- Sector
Configure SQL Co	nnection
Before updating backup of the c	g an existing database you should first make sure you have a latabase.
Server:	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS
Authentication:	O Windows Authentication
	SQL Authentication
Username:	User 1
Password:	••••••
Advanced Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel

- 8. The Installer will test the connection to the database before you can proceed with the installation.
- 9. When the connection test is completed, click **Install**.

😓 EventPro Setup	\times
Ready to Install The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro installation	res)
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.	
Advanced Installer	

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may encounter a warning, and you may need to click **Yes** or **OK** to continue the installation.

10. In the final window, click Finish.



11. Now the Server installation process is complete. Before moving on to Workstation Installations, you first need to <u>Share</u> the Installation Folder 265.

Share Installation Folder

- On the server to which you just installed EventPro, **locate the folder** in which EventPro was installed. By default, it would be **C:\ProgramFiles (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro**, but you may have selected a different folder path in the <u>Select Installation Folder</u> 2021 page of the installation wizard.
- You need to share this Installation Folder so that network users installing EventPro to their workstations can access it.
 - For Sharing, Users will require Read and Change permissions.
 - For **Security**, Users will require **Read & Execute**, **List Folder Contents**, and **Read** permissions. Users will also require **Write** permissions for the installation process, in order to write to the directory.
 - For normal operation, Users do not require Modify and Write permissions. However, if Users do not have Modify and Write permissions, they will not be able to automatically update EventPro on their workstations; they would require assistance from an Admin User. If you want Users to be able to automatically update EventPro themselves, they require Modify and Write permissions.
- The exact process of sharing the folder will vary, depending on the network environment in which you are working. You may have to consult the documentation for your network and operating system to determine how to share the Installation Folder from the Application Server to Workstations.
- Once the folder is shared, you can proceed to **Install EventPro to Workstations** 2851.

Install EventPro to Workstations

- 1. Login to the **Workstation** computer as an Administrator User.
- 2. Navigate to the EventPro.Win.Setup.exe you downloaded earlier [232], and double-click to run it.

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may receive a warning about installing software, and you may need to click **Run** or **OK** to continue the installation.

3. The installation wizard will begin. Click Next to continue.

n EventPro Setup	×
	Welcome to the EventPro Setup Wizard
	The Setup Wizard will install EventPro on your computer. Click "Next" to continue or "Cancel" to exit the Setup Wizard.
	< Back Next > Cancel

- 4. End-User License Agreement:
 - a. Please read the EventPro Software Program License Agreement.
 - b. Select **I ACCEPT** or **I DO NOT ACCEPT** below. If you do not accept the license agreement, you cannot continue with the installation process.
 - c. Click Next to continue.



5. Installation Type:

- a. This time, choose **Workstation Installation**.
- b. Click Next.

둸 EventPro Setup		×
Installation Type		
Select the type of installation to perform.		
O Stand Alone Installation		
○ Server Installation		
Workstation Installation		
Advanced Installer		
	< Back Next >	Cancel

6. Installation Options: Do not select the checkbox for Use Active Directory to log into EventPro. (That option requires the EventPro Active Directory Module, and is covered under <u>Network Install: Active Directory Integration</u> [162] .)

Click Next.

EventPro Setup Installation Options These are options for running EventPro.		×
Use Active Directory to log into E (This requires a license that su		
Advanced Installer	< Back Next >	Cancel

7. Select Installation Folder: You can use the default **Program Files** path for the Installation Folder, or enter a different folder path, if you prefer.

Click Next.

통 EventPro Setup	_		×
Select Installation Folder This is the folder where EventPro will be installed.		X	-25
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, ent "Browse".	er it be	low or click	c
Folder: C:\Program Files (x86)\EventPro Software\EventPro\		Browse	
		browsern	
Advanced Installer			
< Back Next >		Cano	el

- 8. SQL Database:
 - a. **Server**: Enter the **SQL Server Named Instance**, identifying the network name of the computer plus the instance name you specified earlier when installing SQL Server (*i.e.* "SQLEXPRESS"). It will look something like this: **MYDBSERVER**(**SQLEXPRESS**).

- b. Authentication: Select the radio button next to SQL Authentication.
- c. Enter the Username and Password of the SQL User Login you created earlier 241.
- d. Click Next.

둸 EventPro Setup	×
SQL Database	
Configure SQL Co	nnection
Before updating backup of the d	g an existing database you should first make sure you have a latabase.
Server:	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS
Authentication:	O Windows Authentication
	SQL Authentication
Username:	User1
Password:	••••••
Advanced Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel

9. The Installer will test the connection to the database before you can proceed with the installation.

10. Select Server Path:

- a. Enter the path to the installation on the server. This is the <u>Installation Folder</u> and you selected during the Server Installation, and **shared** with the network users in the <u>previous step</u> and .
- b. Click the **Browse** button, locate that folder on the Network, and click **Select Folder**.
- c. Click Next.

EventPro Setup		×
Select Server Path		
Enter the path to the installation on the server.		
To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a "Browse".	a different folder, enter	it below or click
Server Folder:		
		Browse
Advanced Installer		
	Back Next >	Cancel

11. Ready to Install: Click Install.

😓 EventPro Setup	×
Ready to Install	
The Setup Wizard is ready to begin the EventPro installation	9
Click "Install" to begin the installation. If you want to review or change any of your	
installation settings, click "Back". Click "Cancel" to exit the wizard.	
A duran and Ta shellow	
Advanced Installer	

Depending on the security settings on your network or computer, you may encounter a warning, and you may need to click **Yes** or **OK** to continue the installation.

12. In the final window, click Finish.



- 13. Now the workstation installation process is complete.
- 14. Repeat this process on the other workstations in your network.
- 15. You may want to create an EventPro shortcut on each User's desktop so that they can easily locate and run EventPro.
- 16. When you are done installing EventPro to the Server and Workstations, you can proceed to <u>Admin First Login to</u> <u>EventPro</u> 271.

Admin First Login to EventPro

You can log in to EventPro for the first time using the default Administrator account that has been pre-set in EventPro.

- 1. Run EventPro.
- 2. In the Log On dialog, enter these default Administrator credentials:
 - a. User Name: Admin
 - b. Password: EventPro1234

Passwords are case-sensitive.

3. The **EventPro** program opens.

Click My Details under My Workplace in the left-hand navigation pane. Your Security User edit form opens.

You will note that this Admin user has been assigned the Administrator Security Role by default.

2 0 1 ≥ 0 0	C 目 語 つ	,				Admin -	Security L	lser - EventP	ro						—	×
	v Tools	Save and Cancel Clone	Change My Password	Reset Password	Add Note Edit	ABC Check Spelling	X Delete			Key Record	Refresh	Audit Log	Reco	ous Next Record rd Navigation	Close Close	^
My Workplace <	<i> Admin - Security U</i>	ser ×														-
🔏 My Details									C	Options Regional Settings M	essages EPC	onnect Sei	ttings			
附 Task List 평 Task Calendar	User Type: Account:* User Name:* User Code:*	Concu Admir Admir	1				×	•	8	Auto Expand Navigation Auto Center Popup Windows Refresh Data On Tab Switch Open In Existing Tab (faster): Default Print Destination:		None	iew			*
🎪 My Workplace	Change Password O Inactive	n First Logon								Close Report Preview When Pri	nted					
🗶 Events	Font Color: Back Color:		Black LightGray					*	1	Exit Email Recipient Selection O Preview Row Line Count: Edit Form Style:	n Double Click	Non Moda	al Popup			5 ¢
🔄 Lodging	Api Key:									Wizard Form Style:		Default				Ŧ
RM/Sales										Default Task Time From:		8:00 AM				
○ Communications										Default Task Time To: Use Legacy Skins		9:00 AM				
 Tasks Finance 	Security Roles	_			_											
Reports		• 🗗 🚺 🔘	0 7.	•	12											 •
🕼 Mail Merge	Name Administrator															-
↓ [†] Import/Export																
Oashboards																
žil 🕍 🚥																
User: Admin Client ID: 000000	Memory Usage: 177Mi	8 Version: 19.1.2														

- 4. One of the first things you will want to do is change the **Password** for the Admin User, since it is the EventPro default that many people will know.
 - a. In the navigation ribbon above your Security User details, click the **Change My Password** button.



b. The Change Password dialog appears. Enter the Old Password (EventPro1234). Enter and confirm your New Password.

REMEMBER THIS PASSWORD!

<u> </u>	の 目 語 り ・	Admin - Security User - EventPro —	
Records Creation	ave and Save and New Save and Clone Save	Image My Reset Add Note Check Delete Image My Image My Refresh Audit Image My Image My <th></th>	
My Workplace <	Admin - Security User × 30 User		
Task List	User Type: Conc. Account:* User Name:* Admin User Code:* Admin	Change Password Change Vour password, please enter your old and new passwords in the text fields	
💁 My Workplace	Change Password On First Logon	below.	-
🖠 Events 🔄 Lodging 🔩 CRM/Sales	Back Color:		5 ‡ •
 Communications ☑ Tasks 		9:00 AM	
Finance	Security Roles User Groups E		
Mail Merge	Name Administrator		•
↑ Import/Export ● Dashboards		OK Cancel	

- c. Click OK.
- 5. You can make other changes to your Admin account as required.

(Review Security Setup > Users > Create New User in the <u>EventPro User Manual</u>.)

- 6. As the Administrator, there are several actions you will probably need to complete before other Users log into EventPro:
 - a. <u>Create Security Roles</u> 273
 - b. Create Users 276
 - c. Create Internal Company & Contacts 278
- 7. When you have finished the steps described above, you can allow other Users to log into EventPro. See <u>User First</u> Login to EventPro 278.

Create Security Roles

A **Security Role** allows you to define a standard set of permissions for each category of Users according to their ability to access data in EventPro.

You may find it convenient to have your Security Roles set up and defined before you create Users. That way, when you add new Users, you can simply select the applicable Security Role.

- 1. In EventPro, go to Setup > Security > Roles.
- 2. There are several different Role Types: Administrator, Default, Other, and Online.

(Review Security Setup > Roles (Security Permissions) > Create Security Roles > Role in the <u>EventPro User</u> <u>Manual</u>.)

<u>~</u> 0 ≞ ≃ C ·		Security - EventPro	- 0	×	
Home Viev	Tools			\sim	
Setup <	🛱 Security 🛛 🗙			-	
🖗 EventPro Setup	🍰 Users 🤯 Roles 🚟 User Groups	Security Owners Audit Log			
EventProConnect Setup		■ ∞ ◎ ◎ ? • ⊡ • ◎ ⊴ ₽			
🔅 Virtual Assistant Setup	Name	Role Type			
🍰 User Field Definition	Administrator	Administrator			
💞 Model Management	Catering	Other			
	Default	Default			
# Sequence Numbers	Default-Other	Other			
🔒 Security	Events Finance	Other			
	Online	Other			
	Sales	Other			
		Home Girls Role			
💁 My Workplace		Name:			
		Active Directory Groups:			
🕈 Events		Role Type: Other			
🔄 Lodging	L	Other			
	[[busers 🛱 Basic Perm Default			
CRM/Sales		Administrator			
Q 🖣 ····		Unine	Account	Lines Turne	In
lass Admin Client ID: 001000	Memory Linger 160MD Version 10.1	Name Oser Code	Account	User Type	111
	Memory Usage: 169MB Version: 19.1	Login User AUser Code	Account	User Type	
		ser: Admin			

- 3. The **Administrator Security Role** is assigned to the default EventPro Admin User. Typically, very few Users should get this Security Role, as it allows full access to the program.
- 4. If you do not create any other Security Roles, any other Users you create in EventPro will be assigned the **Default** Security Role. If all of your EventPro Users - besides Administrators - will have the same security rights in EventPro, then having just the **Default Security Role** may be sufficient.

If you haven't already, you can **adjust the Default Security Role** so that it provides the correct permissions for the EventPro Users you plan to assign to this role.

(Review Security Setup > Roles > Create Security Roles > Permissions in the EventPro User Manual.)

<u></u> 0 ∎ ≅ C ·		Security - EventPro	-	×	
Home View	Tools			~	
Setup <	Security ×			-	
🛷 EventPro Setup	😼 Users 🤯 Roles 🏽 🌺 User Groups 🏾 🎯 Security Owners				
ở EventProConnect Setup		▼ • □ • □ ③ ③ □			
🐉 Virtual Assistant Setup	Name	Role Type			
🍰 User Field Definition	Administrator	Administrator			
a Model Management	Catering	Other Default		 	
# Sequence Numbers	Default			 	
G Security		Default - Security Role			×
. Security	Home				~
	🧐 Role				
	Name: Default				
	Active Directory Groups:				*
	Role Type: Default				Ŧ
		Dashboard Permissions Der Interface Permissions			
	🔊 Setup/Security	🐺 Venue Permissions 🛛 🖑 Restrictions 💭 Communications			
📌 Events	Security				
🔤 Lodging	Access Security: None				-
CRM/Sales	Reset Password: Deny				-
	Setup				
Ω 🖻 …	Access Setup: None				-
User: Admin Client ID: 001000 I	Modify Setup Items: None				*
	Create Setup Items: None				Ŧ
	Delete Setup Items: None				Ŧ
	Allow Open Object on Setup Items: Deny				
	User Fields				
	Access User Field Setup: None				-
	Time Zones				
	Access Set Time Zones: Deny				-
	User: Admin				

5. If one Default Security Role for all Users is not sufficient, and you want to further compartmentalize User security permissions in EventPro - for example, differentiating rights based on department or management hierarchy - you need to create **additional EventPro Security Roles** of the "**Other**" type.

You could, for example, have Security Roles called **Event Managers**, **Finance**, and **Catering**. Those Security Roles would all be of the Role Type "**Other**", but would have different assigned permissions, depending on the information that staff members in those roles need to access.

Additionally, there is the Role Type **"Online"**, which you use to set permissions related to online activities in **EPConnect**. If you want a User to be able to log into EPConnect, they must be assigned an Online-type security role. If a User needs to log into both the EventPro application and EPConnect, the User must be assigned an Online-type role **and** another type of security role (*i.e.* Default, Other, or Administrator).

(Review Security Setup > Roles (Security Permissions) > Create Security Roles in the EventPro User Manual.)

0 ≞ ≅ € .	Security - EventPro	—		×	
Home Vie	w Tools			~	
Setup <	G Security ×			-	
ở EventPro Setup	🐉 Users 🤯 Roles 👹 User Groups 🍖 Security Owners 🧕 Audit Log				
ở EventProConnect Setup					
🛷 Virtual Assistant Setup	Name Role Type				
luser Field Definition	Administrator Administrator				
💣 Model Management	Catering Other Default Default				
# Sequence Numbers		_			
G Security	🕜 🖲 🔁 🗒 🤺 Event Managers - Security Role		—		×
 My Workplace ✓ Events ☑ Lodging ❑ CRM/Sales ○ ☑ ···· 	Name: Event Managers Active Directory Groups:				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Delete Events: Allow Assigned Only			-	
User: Admin Client ID: 001000	riong rection rome			*	
	Allow Open Object on Event Items: View				
	User: Admin				

6. When you are done editing and/or creating Security Roles, you can proceed to Create Users 2761.

Create Users

- 1. You can now create the **Security Users** to match the staff members that will be using EventPro. Review the instructions under **Security Setup > Users > Create New User** in the <u>EventPro User Manual</u>.
- 2. Make sure that you assign each User the correct **Security Role**, particularly if you created Security Roles in addition to the built-in Default Security Role.
- 3. Ensure that you adjust the User's **Password** so that the User can log in for the first time. In the User's edit form, you can choose one of two options: **Change Password on First Logon** or **Reset Password**.
 - a. Select the **Change Password on First Logon** checkbox. The User will be able to log in the first time with just the User Name, leaving the Password blank, and EventPro will ask the User to set a new password.

) 🗎 🖬 😋 ,	Security - EventPro	—		×
	Home View Tools				~
Setup	< 🕄 Security	κ			*
🖑 EventP	🥿 🛛 🖉 🖱 🛤 '	γ • PGD - Security User —			
🐉 EventP	Home			^	
🖑 Virtual		🛛 📑 🗐 🔎 📰 🖓 🗙 🧳 📰 🖉 Refresh	×		
🌲 User Fi	New Clone Save Save	and Save and New Save and Cancel Reset Add Note Check Delete Open Related	Close		A
🂣 Model I	Clo	ise Clone Password Spelling Record Record	-		
# Sequer	Records Creation	Save Edit Open Related Record View Records Navigation	Close		
3 Securit	嵾 User	Options Regional Settings Messages EPConnect Settings			
	User Type:	Named Auto Expand Navigation Auto Center Popup Windows Auto Center Popup Windows 			
	Account:*	Refresh Data On Tah Switch			
	User Name:*	PearlDelany Open In Existing Tab (faster): Events, Companies, Contacts		*	
	User Code:*	PGD Default Print Destination:		-	
	Change Password On First Logon Inactive	Close Report Preview When Printed			
	Font Color:	Black			
🏠 My V	Back Color:	Azure Preview Row Line Count:	0	÷	
teg My V	Api Key:	Edit Form Style: Default		-	
📌 Even		Wizard Form Style: Default		*	
Contra da		Default Task Time From: 8:00 AM			
🖃 Lodg		Default Task Time To: 9:00 AM			
🖳 CRM		Use Legacy Skins			
💭 Com	🤯 Security Roles 🛛 🏰 User Grou	ps 🖂 Email Accounts 🥥 Trace Log			
🔊 Task					
	Name				
🗏 Finar	 Default 				
📋 Repo					-
Q.					
	User: Admin				
User: Admin					

b. Click the **Reset Password** button, and assign a default **Password**. The User will be able to log in the first time with this temporary password, and EventPro will ask the User to set a new password.

6) Ø 🗈 ĭ C →		Secur	rity - EventPro				- 🗆	×
	Home View	Tools							~
Setu	ID < 🛱 Sec	curity ×							
÷			PGD - S	Security User					
3	Home	X						^	_
			ABC	\mathbf{Y}		C 🚺	33 Find	×	
2	New Clone Save Sav	e and Save and New Save and Cancel Reset		Delete Generate Clear	Open Related	Refresh Audit	Previous Record	Close	
		lose Clone Passwo		Api Key Api Key	Record	Log	🕑 Next Record	Close	
<i>ब</i> ै	Records Creation	Save	Edit	Record Edit	Open Related Record	View	Records Navigation	Close	
#	纋 User			Options Regional Settings	Messages EPConnect S	ettings			
	User Type:	Named		Auto Expand Navigation					
	Account:*		Q Reset Password			×			
	User Name:*	PearlDelany	Set	ting the user's password will cre	eate a new password for th	P			_
	User Code:*	PGD	🔥 🔥 use	er automatically, and at the sam h the old password. You must t	e time disable the user's log	in anies, contact	15	*	-
	Change Password On First Logon		to t	the user, so he/she can continu you sure you want to do this?	e to work with the application	on.			
	Inactive		Are	you sure you want to do this?					
	Font Color: Back Color:	Black	Password: password	d				0 0	
₫	Api Key:	Azure						*	
*	Api Ney.			Re	set Password Cancel			*	_
				Default Task Time To:	9:00 AM	1			
₽2				Use Legacy Skins					
	Security Roles 🎎 User Grou	ups 🖂 Email Accounts 🥥 Trace Log							_
									-
7	Name								
	▶ Default								-
									1
User	User: Admin								.:

4. One other thing you may want to do with your EventPro Users is attach them to Contacts in CRM. It is an optional step, but if you want to do so, see <u>Create Internal Company & Contacts</u>^[278].

Create Internal Company & Contacts

1. You do not need to attach Security Users to CRM Accounts in EventPro, but you may find it useful for internal processes.

NOTE: In EventPro, a CRM Account can be either a Contact or a Company. A Contact does not need to be attached to a single Company; a Contact can be an independent Account, or be linked to multiple companies.

- 2. You can create your internal Contacts and Company, if applicable, by following these instructions:
 - a. Company/Contact Management (CRM) > Add New Company (Company Edit Form) in the <u>EventPro User</u> <u>Manual</u>.
 - b. Company/Contact Management (CRM) > Add New Contact (Contact Edit Form) in the EventPro User Manual.
- 3. Once you have Accounts set up in CRM, you can then **edit** each User's profile under **Security Setup**.
- 4. In the **Security User edit form**, use the **Account** drop-down to find and select the correct Contact or Company for the User. **Save and Close** each User's edit form when you are done.

30 🗈	≅ C ·						Sec	urity - Eve	entPro					- 🗆	
Hom	ne View	Tools													
านท	< 🛱 Se	curity >	c												
	0 C H H						PGD -	Security l	Jser						
\mathbf{Q}															
	Home													~	Ì
		×		15	\sim	1	ABC	×	B		=	a 🔁	Find	×	
New Clone	e Save Sav	and Sa	ve and New Save	and Cancel	Reset	Add Note	Check	Delete	Generate	Clear	Open Related	Refresh Audit	Previous Record	Close	
New Clon		ose	Clo		Password	Add Note	Spelling	Delete	Api Key	Api Key	Record	Log	Next Record	Close	
Records Crea	tion		Save			Edit			Recor	d Edit	Open Related Record	View	Records Navigation	Close	
🧞 User								Ontio	Do Docior	al Cattinga	Messages EPConnect S	attines			
W USEI		_						opuo	ris Regior	iai setungs	Messages EPConnect a	securigs			٦
User Type:		Named					-		Expand Na	-					
Account:*		Delany,	Pearl G			×	- 📑	Auto	Center Pop	oup Window	/5 🗸				
User Name:	*	Туре	Account											<u> </u>	
User Code:*	•	Find:	ep event										× Search	-	
Change Pas	sword On First Logon		able records:											-	
Inactive		AValla	ible records:												
Font Color:		1	Гуре	Name		▲ P	osition		F	rimary Ema	il	Company	Name	0 ‡	
Back Color:			Company	*EP Event \	/enue	C	Office Man	ager	E	PVenue@e	xample.com	*EP Even	it Venue 🔺		
Api Key:			Contact	Archer, Gra			quipment				ner@example.com	*EP Even			
			Contact	Bethel, Time			ent Man	-			hel@example.com	*EP Even			
			Contact	Delany, Pea			lient Cons		-		xample.com	*EP Even			
			Contact	Gatzke, Sha			ivent Man	-			xample.com	*EP Even			
			Contact	Griffon, Alio Howery, Za			Office Man Finance Ma	-			<u>er@example.com</u> very@example.com	*EP Even			
🧐 Security	Roles 🎎 User Grou		Contact	Ingram, Elle			ales Cons	-			@example.com	*EP Even			
		1 1 2	Contact	Julliard, Ho			ales Cons				ard@example.com	*EP Even			
	•		Contact	Kidwell, Tes			IR Manage				l@example.com	*EP Even	it Venue		
Name			Contact	Mallard, Sar	ndra G	C	atering M	anager	5	andra.malla	ard@example.com	*EP Even	it Venue	^	-
 Default 			Contact	Osbourne,	Deanna W	В	looking Ca	nsultant	g	leanna.osb	ourne@example.com	*EP Even	it Venue 🔻		
													New -		
														1	

5. When you are done linking Accounts to Users, you can proceed to User First Login to EventPro 2781.

User First Login to EventPro

- 1. When you are done creating Users, you can distribute **User Names** (and default **Passwords**, if applicable) to the relevant members of your organization, and ask them to run EventPro on their **workstations**.
- 2. The Log On dialog appears. The User will enter his/her User Name.

The **Password** depends on how you set up the User's profile, *i.e.* whether you selected **Change Password to First Logon** or **Reset Password**:

a. If you selected the **Change Password on First Logon** checkbox in the User's profile, the User can leave the Password blank and click **OK**.

🔒 Log On		×
	Please enter your login information below. User Name: PearlDelany Password: (Passwords are case sensitive)	
	Log In Cancel	

b. If you **Reset** the Password on the User's profile, the User can enter the temporary password that you set on the profile, and click **OK**.

🔒 Log On		×
	Please enter your login information below. User Name: PearlDelany Password: ******* (Passwords are case sensitive)	
	Log In Cano	:el

3. Either way, the **Change Password on First Logon** dialog appears.

The User must enter and confirm a New Password, and click OK.

🕐 Change passw	vord on first logon	_		×
pa pa	or security reasons, you must now set your own password. Plea assword in the two text fields below, and be sure not to reuse a fore.	ise enter you a password yo	r new ou used	
New Password:	*********			
Confirm Password:	*******			
		ОК	Cancel	

4. Once in EventPro, the User can view his/her profile by clicking **My Details** in the left navigation panel.

Installation is complete and EventPro is now ready to use.

O ■ ■ Home Vie		略 か ・		PGD		/ User - E	ventPr							
New Clone Save	Save and Close	Clone	Change My Password	Add Note Edit	ABC Check Spelling	X Delete	Gener Api K	ate Clear	Open Rela	1	C Refresh Vie	Log	 Find Previous Record Next Record Records Navigation 	Close
My Workplace 🔨	PGD - Security													
My Details	User Type: Account:* User Name:* User Name:*	Named Delany, Pe PearlDelan PGD						Auto Cente Refresh Da	Regional Settings nd Navigation er Popup Windows ata On Tab Switch risting Tab (faster):	Messages	□ ✓	nect Settin	-	
My Workplace	Inactive						Open In Existing Tab (faster): Events, Companies, Contacts Default Print Destination: Q Preview							
🛃 Events 🔄 Lodging 🗽 CRM/Sales	Font Color: Back Color: Api Key:	Azur					Close Report Preview When Printed Exit Email Recipient Selection On Double Click					0		
💭 Communications 🕅 Tasks								Default Tas Default Tas Use Legacy			8:00 AM 9:00 AM			
Finance	Security Roles		Email Accounts	s 🥥 Trac	ce Log									
Mail Merge ↓ [†] Import/Export	Name → Default													<u>1.</u>
💿 🎦 🚧 🚥 Iser: PearlDelany Client ID: 0	01000 Memory Usage:	: 171MB Version: 19.1.2												

Alternate Database Restore Process

- In the various sample installation procedures described above, we followed a certain sequence of steps to prepare your EventPro database: create a new placeholder database, and then restore the existing EventPro database over the placeholder.
- We also noted that there is an **alternate sequence of steps** that you could follow after installing the Data Updater. These instructions will briefly describe this alternate process.
 - 1. After installing the Data Updater, you can **restore the backup** of the existing, prepared EventPro database. (In this sequence of steps, you are not restoring it over another database, as described in the other method of preparing the database.)
 - a. Run **SQL Server Management Studio**. (Remember that the version of SQL Server Management Studio you are running may be different, but you should be able to find the same or similar functions.)
 - b. In SQL Server Management Studio, right-click the Databases folder and select Restore Database.

Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q) </th
Object Explore Image: Context - Image: Contex

c. In the **Restore Database** window, under **Source**, select the radio button next to **Device**, and click the ellipsis.

The Select Backup Device window appears.

d. In the Select Backup Device window, click Add.

🛃 м	Aicrosoft SQL Server Management Stu	ıdio		Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	Q		x
File E	🔀 Restore Database -				- [) ×	
0 G •	🐼 No backupset selected to be restore	d.					
S T	Select a page	🗐 Script 👻 😯 Help					
Object I	🔑 Files	Source					
		O Database:				~	
+		Device:					
÷		Database:				\sim	
Ŧ		Destination					
+		Database:	📟 Select backup devices		- 0	×]	
Ŧ		Restore to:	 Specify the backup media and its location for y 	your restore operation			
		Restore plan				-	
		Backup sets to restore:	Backup media type: File	~			
		Restore Name Component	Backup media:			۵	
					Add		
	Connection				Remove		
	MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS [PSI\Sample]				Contents	_	
					Contents		
	View connection properties						
	Progress	<					
	Ready	<					
	~4.6×			OK Cance	el Help		
				OK	Cancel	Help	
/7 Read	tv.						

e. The Locate Backup File dialog appears. Find and select the backup file of the EventPro database that your Training or Support Specialist sent you, and click OK. Click OK in the Select Backup Devices window to return to the Restore Database window.

. <mark></mark> N	Microsoft SQL Server Managemer	nt Studio			Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	۹ –		×
File	🛙 🕵 Restore Database -					- 🗆	×	
	No backupset selected to be n	estored.						
8 † 1	Select a page	🖵 Scrip	t 👻 😯 Help					
Object Conne	🖌 🖛 Select backup devices		_	×				
	1	id its location for y	our restore operation.				\sim	
+		File	🗧 🗎 Locate Backup File - MYDBSE	RVER\SQLEXPRESS	_		×	
+	Backub media:		Backup File location:	VPSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro Softw	vare \l 🕐			
	Cc Y View connection properties Progress Ready	<	Generative System Volume Informatic Generative System Volume Informa	~	K Backup Files(* bak;* tm OK	;°Jog) ∨ Cancel		
🗇 Read	idy							

- f. Back in the **Restore Database** window, check that the **Destination Database** is correct. If you prefer, you can change the name of the database to the commonly used **EventProData**.
- g. Click **OK**. The database restore will begin.

L	erver Management St						Quic	k Launch (C	trl+Q)	٩	-		×
	Droject Tools		n								_		
🕒 🔤 🛃 🧏 🥵 Restore D	💀 Restore Database - EventProData									_		×	
🙀 🚺 Ready													
Object a page	e	🚺 Script 🕞	😮 Hel	р									
Object Conne Files													
Continue		Source -											
		🔿 Dat	abase:									\sim	
		Dev	vice:	C		LICATIONS\Even	Pro Software\Data	a\000000 Sa	mple.bak		1		
			Database		0000						1	~	
+				. 00									
+		Destinatio	n —										
+		Databa	ise:	Ev	entProDa	ata						\sim	
+		Restor	e to:	Th	e last ba	ckup taken (Tuesd	ay, April 16, 2019 !	5:05:15 PM)			Timelin	ne	
+		Restore p	lan —										
				tore:									
		Restore		Component	Туре	Server	Database	Position	First LSN			Last L	
				Database	Full	SRVR\SQL02	000000	1	167050000	00119800	0037	1670!	
Connection													
v ₩ MYDBSEF [PSI\Sam]	VER\SQLEXPRESS ple]												
<u>View connection</u>	on properties												
Progress													
Oone Done		<								Verify Bao	ckup M	> Nedia	
								ОК	Car	icel	He	elp]

h. When the database restoration is complete, you will see that your EventPro database has been added under **Databases** in the **Object Explorer** panel of **SQL Server Management Studio**.

🛃 Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio	Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)							
File Edit View Project Tools Window Help								
🛛 O - O 🏗 - 🔄 🖴 🔐 💭 New Query 🗿 🖓 🎧 🎧 🎧 🖉 🗄 🏼 フ - ペ - 🐼 🏓	- 🗔 🄑 🟛 🖸 - 🖕							
※ 👻 👻 💽 🕞 Execute 🔳 🗸 않 🗐 🗐 방 않 🕮 🗐 ☶ 🗈 🖄 분 환 🐌	÷							
Object Explorer 👻 🕂 🗙								
Connect - 🛱 🎽 🗮 🝸 🖒 🔸								
🖃 🔂 MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS (SQL Server 14.0.1000								
🖂 📕 Databases								
🗑 🛑 System Databases 🗑 📁 Database Snapshots								
Baladase Shapshols EventProData								
🗄 📕 Security								
🕀 🛑 Server Objects								
🛞 🛑 PolyBase B 💼 Management								
KEvent Profiler								
☐ Ready								

- 2. The next step is to **install EventPro Software**. Follow the process as described for the particular installation type, but do not run the EventPro program yet. This step will add the **EventProMaster** database.
- 3. Next, you will link the client database to the EventProMaster database.
 - a. Run the Database Utility Wizard and select "Create a Master Database Client ID".


b. In the **Target Database** page of the wizard, enter the required information. Most of these fields are described in the installation instructions above, except for **Tenant I.D.**, which is a field required specifically for linking the client and Master databases.

Enter the target	database information.	
Database Informat	tion	
Database Type	MS-SQL	,
Server	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS	
Authentication		
User name		
Password		
Database	EventProData	
Settings		
Client I.D.	0000000	
Tenant I.D.	1234ABCD5678EFGH	
Cloud Data		
License File	C:\PSI APPLICATIONS\EventPro Software\EventPro\Licence.ini	

- c. To find the **Tenant I.D.**, return to **SQL Server Management Studio**. (Remember that your version of SQL Server Management Studio may be slightly different, but you should be able to find the same or similar functions.)
- d. In the **Object Explorer** panel, expand **Databases > EventProData** (or whatever your client database is called) **> Tables**, and locate the **SecurityUser** database.
- e. Right-click the SecurityUser database, and click Select Top 1000 Rows.

Policies Facets Start PowerShell Reports Rename Delete Refresh	Solution1 - Microsoft SQL Server N	Management Studio			Quick Launch (Ctrl+Q)	₽ _	×
Object Explorer • # * # Connect • # * # • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	File Edit View Project Tools	Window Help					
Object Explorer • # * Connect • # *# • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	0 - 0 👸 - 🏷 - 🖕 🔛 🔐	B New Query B AN AN ANA AN	※ 口 命 り・ペ・	8 1	- 🗔 🖌	u 💼 🖂 🗸 🔤	
Object Explorer • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •						•	
Ready	Object Explorer			1 1			
Beady Beady							
Freedy							
Image: Bio Security							
Im dbo.SecurityDashbard Im dbo.SecurityFinancialSubGroup Im dbo.SecurityFinancialSubGroup Im dbo.SecurityPermission Im dbo.SecurityPermission <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>							
 dbo.SecurityTrinncialSubGroup dbo.SecurityTrinncialSubGroup dbo.SecurityOwner dbo.SecurityOwner dbo.SecurityOwner dbo.SecurityTermission dbo.SecurityTermis		-					
 III dho.SecurityFinancialSubGroup III dho.SecurityForm III dho.SecurityV <li< th=""><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></li<>							
dbo.SecurityOwner dbo.SecurityOwner dbo.SecurityO							
dbo.SecurityRemission dbo.SecurityRemission dbo.SecurityRemission dbo.SecurityU d							
 I doo.Security/Report I doo.Security/I I doo.Security/I<!--</th--><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th>							
Image: Base of the security of the							
Image: Image		n a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a					
Image: mage:							
Image: Bin dbo.Security Select Top 1000 Rows Image: Bin dbo.Security Edit Top 200 Rows Image: Bin dbo.Security Script Table as Image: Bin dbo.Security View Dependencies Image: Bin dbo.Security View Dependencies Image: Bin dbo.Security Memory Optimization Advisor Image: Bin dbo.SetupAce Encrypt Columns Image: Bin dbo.SetupAce Storage Image: Bin dbo.SetupAce Storage<		Table					
 If dbo.SecurityU Edit Top 200 Rows Script Table as Script Table as View Dependencies Memory Optimization Advisor If dbo.SetupAcc If dbo.SetupAcc	🗉 🎹 dbo.SecurityU	Design					
Image: dbo.Security Script Table as Image: dbo.Security Script Table as Image: dbo.Security View Dependencies Image: dbo.SetupAce Memory Optimization Advisor Image: dbo.SetupAce Encrypt Columns Image: dbo.SetupAce Storage Image: dbo.SetupAce Storage <td></td> <td>Select Top 1000 Rows</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>		Select Top 1000 Rows					
Image: Script Table as Image: Script		Edit Top 200 Rows					
Image: Image		Script Table as					
Image: Base of the obset with the obset		View Dependencies					
 Metholy Optimization Advisor I dbo.SetupAcc I d							
 I dbo.SetupAc I dbo.SetupAc I dbo.SetupAc I full-Text index Storage Storage Stretch Policies Facets Start PowerShell Reports Rename Delete Refresh 							
Ready Image: Ready Storage Storage Strack Policies Policies Facets Start PowerShell Reports Rename Delete Refresh		Encrypt Columns					
C Storage C Storage C Storage Storage Storage Storage Storage Policies Policies Facets Facets Start PowerShell Reports Rename Delete Delete Refresh		Full-Text index					
Policies Facets Start PowerShell Reports Rename Delete Refresh		Storage					
Facets Start PowerShell Reports Rename Delete Refresh	🗇 Ready	Stretch +					
Start PowerShell Reports Rename Delete Refresh		Policies					
Reports Rename Delete Refresh		Facets					
Rename Delete Refresh		Start PowerShell					
Delete Refresh		Reports					
Delete Refresh		Rename					
		Refresh					
Properties		Properties					

f. In the **Results** tab to the bottom right, locate the **Tenant I.D.** column, and copy any one of the values.

File Edit V	2.sql - MYDBSERVER\SQLEXPRESS.EventProD iew Query Project Tools Window 3 • 10 • 20 ■ 10 ₪ New Query 4 ntProData • ▶ Execute	v Help S	ample	-	7		unch (Ctrl+Q)	_ م ب ح شر کر	• ×
	Image: Constraint of the system Image: Constraint of the system <td>* # ×</td> <td> /* SE</td> <td>y2.sql - PSLta (PSI\Sample) ***** Script for SelectT. *ECT TOP (1000) [Oid] , [TimeZone] , [Created] , [CreatedBy] , [CreatedWith] , [Modified] , [Modified] , [ModifiedWith] , [TenantID] , [Account] , [UserCode] , [Settings] , [UserName] , [UserNameInternal] * 4 ## Messages</td> <td>⇒ X opNRows co</td> <td>mmand from SS</td> <td>MS ******/</td> <td>/</td> <td></td>	* # ×	/* SE	y2.sql - PSLta (PSI\Sample) ***** Script for SelectT. *ECT TOP (1000) [Oid] , [TimeZone] , [Created] , [CreatedBy] , [CreatedWith] , [Modified] , [Modified] , [ModifiedWith] , [TenantID] , [Account] , [UserCode] , [Settings] , [UserName] , [UserNameInternal] * 4 ## Messages	⇒ X opNRows co	mmand from SS	MS ******/	/	
	Image: SecurityUser_SecurityUserGroup Image: SecurityUserGroup	*	n 1 2 3 4 5 6 6 7 8 8 9 < < 2 0 Quer	TenantID F8217568-9589-4E89-9B69-E4477 F8217568-9589-4E89-9B69-E4 F8217568-9589-48 F8217568-9589-48 F8217568-9589-48 F8217568-9589-48 F	Copy Copy with Select Al Save Res Page Set Print 96C956B8	th Headers I ults As up 523CD65D-634	Admin Ctrl+C Ctrl+Shift+C Ctrl+A Ctrl+P VAU	Settings 0x899AF89AB9218CF8 899AF89AB9218CF8 899AF89AB9218CF8 899AF89AB9218CF8 899AF89AB9218CF8 899AF89AB9218CF8 899AF89AB9218CF8 899AF89AB9218CF8 0x899AF89AB9218CF8 0x899AF89AB9218CF8	8AF790 8AF790 8AF790 8AF790 8AF790 8AF790 8AF790 8AF790 8AF790 ¥

- g. Return to the **EventPro Database Utility wizard**, and paste that Tenant I.D. value into the **Tenant I.D.** field of the **Target Database** page.
- h. Finish working through the EventPro Database Utility wizard.
- 4. You can now continue with the installation process as described for the particular installation type you are completing. This may mean you now have to give database rights to users, change the SQL user's rights, or login to EventPro for the first time.

EventPro Desktop Shortcuts

When you install EventPro Software, the installer will automatically create an **desktop icon** that points to the **32-bit** version of EventPro.

- Typically, **32-bit** version of EventPro is suitable for most users.
- There is usually no reason to use the 64-bit version of EventPro, unless you are integrating EventPro with Outlook 64bit.
- If your installation will be integrated with Outlook 64-bit, or there are other reasons you require EventPro 64-bit, please ask your EventPro Trainer or contact EventPro Support to change the target of the desktop shortcut.

Update Software License

- 1. Proceed to the **EventPro website** and login to the **Client Login area** with your 6-digit license **User ID** and 4-digit **Password**.
- 2. Locate your License file, and click **Download File** to download the license.
- 3. Save your license file to your EventPro folder.
- 4. In your EventPro folder, run the EventPro.EPDataUpdater application file to start the EventPro Database Utility Wizard.

5. The EventPro Database Utility Wizard begins.



- 6. Choose the **Update License in Master Database** option. Click **Next**.
- 7. **Target Database**: Enter the relevant information for the target database.

tPro Database Util	ty	
r get Database Enter the target	database information.	
Database Informa	ion	
Database Type	MS-SQL	•
Server	MYDBSERVER \SQLEXPRESS	
Authentication		
User name		
Password		
Settings		
Client I.D.	000000	
Cloud Data		
License File	C:\EventPro\Licence.ini	
		Back Update Canc

a. Database Information:

- i. Enter in your Database Type and Server name.
- ii. If you are using **SQL Authentication**, check the Authentication checkbox and enter the SQL server username and password.
- iii. If you are using **Windows Authentication**, leave the Authentication checkbox unchecked.

b. Settings:

- i. Enter your Client ID, which is your 6 digit user ID number or the same value used to create the database
- ii. Leave Cloud Data unchecked.
- iii. In the **License File** field, click the ellipsis button to browse to the license file that you just downloaded. Once you've located the license file, click **Open** to select.
- 8. Click Update.
- 9. "Completed" will be displayed in the Results section of the Database Conversion Complete window. Click Finish.
- 10. Your license has now been updated.
- 11. The person with Administrator rights to perform this update should log into EventPro first, before other users, to complete the update process. After the Administrator has logged into EventPro, the other users can log in as usual.

Update Your Software

- These instructions will explain how to install Software Updates on your Network Installation of EventPro. If you are using the EventPro Cloud application, you do not need to download or install updates. See Get Your Software Cloud
 <u>Update Cloud Software</u> [55].
- **NOTE**: Updating EventPro Software should only be performed by authorized users with sufficient IT knowledge and understanding of your organization's network. If you are uncertain how to proceed with a software update, please contact **EventPro Support** for assistance.
- Preliminary Step: Backups
 - 1. Before updating, it is **important to backup your EventPro data**. You should make backups of the following databases:
 - a. The EventProMaster database, which has the same name for every user.
 - b. The database that stores your event data, often called **EventProData**. Typically, this database would have been created and named by your Trainer when you first installed EventPro.
 - 2. The process for making backups will vary, depending on the software you are using to manage your databases.

Please consult the documentation of the database management software you use.

- a. For example, in Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, you right-click the database, go into the **Tasks** submenu and select **Backup**.
- b. You can add or remove file destinations to where a backup can be saved.
- c. Give your backup a unique name, and click OK.
- 3. Regardless of which database management software you use, you should do a "Full" backup of both databases.

• Retrieve the Software Update

- 1. Login to the **Client** area of the **EventPro website**, and go to the **Download** page.
- 2. If you are authorized to accept Software License Agreements on behalf of EventPro XAF with your organization's Client ID, and you accept the EventPro Software Program License Agreement, you can select the checkbox.
- 3. Click the **Download File** link beside the file named **EventPro.Win.Setup.##.#.##.######.exe**. The version number will vary, but the format will be similar.
- 4. Save the file to an appropriate destination on your machine.

• Server Update Process

- 1. Run the EventPro.Win.Setup.##.##.###.###.exe executable you downloaded earlier.
- 2. The Installation Wizard appears. Click Next.
- 3. End-User License Agreement: If you accept the terms in the License Agreement, select the "I accept..." radio button, and click Next.
- 4. Installation Type: Select Server Installation, and click Next.
- 5. Installation Options: If your license contains the EventPro Active Directory Module, you will select the checkbox. Otherwise, leave the checkbox unchecked. Click Next.
- 6. Select Installation Folder: Browse and enter the existing path for the current installation of EventPro using a UNC. Click Next.
 - a. **IMPORTANT**: If the UNC seems to change back to a **local path** when you click **Next** (something starting with a C: or another drive letter), use the local path for now, and note that there will be an <u>extra step</u> [292] at the end of the installation.
 - b. About UNC: A UNC is a network path that includes the computer's name.

For example, if your computer's name is MyPC and EventPro is installed on C:\EventPro, your UNC could be \\MyPC\EventPro\. If you do not know your computer name, you can check in the computer's settings or type "computer name" in the taskbar or Start menu search box.

However, identifying the UNC is not always that straightforward, depending on your network. If you aren't certain about your network's UNC, you may want to contact your IT Department or EventPro Support for assistance, and record the UNC for future updates.

- 7. **SQL Database**: Enter the path to the server your EventPro database is located on. The path is in the format "ComputerName\ServerName".
 - a. If you are not sure what the path to the server is, you can find this information in your database management software, although it will vary, depending on the software you use.
 - i. For example, in Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, this information is available by right-clicking the EventProMaster database and selecting **Properties**. In the pop-up window that appears, the **Server** is listed in the left pane.
 - b. The **credentials** you enter are based on your original setup.
 - i. If you select **Windows Authentication**, it will try to connect to the database with the **current Windows User's credentials**.
 - ii. If you select **SQL Authentication**, the **SQL account credentials** have to be entered manually.
 - c. Select the applicable authentication option, enter credentials if necessary, and click Next.
- 8. The installer will attempt to connect to your database, and will only continue if the connection is successful.

If it does not continue, there is an issue with your credentials and/or SQL server path.

- 9. Once your installation is configured, click **Install**.
- 10. **EXTRA STEP FOR CHANGING UNC**: If the UNC did not stick in <u>step 6</u> arlier (*i.e.* it kept reverting to a local path), you must do the following set of steps. If you do not, Workstation installations will look in the wrong place when attempting to update automatically.

If you are not certain how to find or edit the files described below, you may want to contact your IT Department or EventPro Support to walk you through the process for the first time.

- a. Open your computer's File Explorer, and navigate to the folder to which you installed EventPro.
- b. Locate the EventPro.Win.exe and EventPro.Win32.exe config files.

Depending on how you have File Explorer configured, you should be able to see that these files are marked as **CONFIG File**.

- c. **Right-click** the **EventPro.Win.exe** file, select **Open With**, and choose whichever text editor you prefer (*e.g.* Notepad).
- d. Look at the eighth line, which will be similar to this:

<add key="NewVersionServer" value="C:\EventPro\" />

This is the path that Workstations will look to when attempting to update, so this path needs to be a UNC.

e. Delete the path currently between the quotation marks, and replace it with the UNC path you tried to enter in step 6 [29].

So, for example, if the UNC is \\MyPC\EventPro\, that path would be put between the quotation marks. As noted above, remember that your UNC will be different, as it is specific to your network.

<add key="NewVersionServer" value="\\MyPC\EventPro\" />

- f. **Save** the file and close.
- g. Now repeat the process, c. to f., with the **EventPro.Win32.exe** file.

• Workstation Update Process

1. After you update the server, the workstations should automatically update when the users run and log into EventPro.

Get Help

- EventPro has offices in North America, Australia, and the United Kingdom, allowing us to provide sales, training, and support services to our clients in all time zones.
- Support:
 - EventPro Software is backed by our team of dedicated, in-house Support experts.
 - If you require assistance with your EventPro application, please contact Support in the region nearest you: <u>https://www.eventpro.net/contact-us.html</u>
 - For most efficient service, please provide this information when contacting Support:
 - Your Name and Company Name.
 - Your 6-digit User I.D. number.
 - If this is an existing case, your HQ Number, which can be found in the Support email you have received.
 - **Details** about your issue or question.
 - Please note that in order to access Support, you must have a current Upgrade Protection Plan (UPP).
- Sales:
 - Any of our **Solutions Consultants** will be happy to answer your questions and discuss how the EventPro Software application and various Modules will meet the needs of your organization.
 - Feel free to contact a Solutions Consultant in the region nearest you: <u>https://www.eventpro.net/contact-us.html</u>

Copyright & Disclaimers

© 2021 EventPro Software, a wholly owned subsidiary of Profit Systems Inc.

Your rights to EventPro Software are governed by its accompanying software license agreement.

The owner or authorized user of a valid copy of EventPro Software may make copies of the EventPro Software Installation Guide for the purpose of learning how to use EventPro Software, provided this **copyright page and this permission notice are preserved on all copies**. Copies may not be made for commercial purposes.

Other products that are referred to in this document are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of their respective owners. This document mentions other products for informational purposes only, and is not intended as an endorsement or recommendation. EventPro Software and Profit Systems Inc. make no claim to these trademarks and assume no responsibility for the performance of those products.

The content of this document is provided for informational use only, and is not warranted to produce any particular results. EventPro Software, Profit Systems Inc. and contributors to this document assume no responsibility or liability for errors, inaccuracies or omissions in this document. EventPro Software, Profit Systems Inc. and contributors to this document shall not be liable for any loss of profit or any other damages resulting or alleged to have resulted, directly or indirectly, from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. The content of this document is subject to change without notice.

For purposes of illustration, the contributors have created various names, company names, mailing addresses, phone numbers, email addresses, *etc.*, all of which are fictitious. Any resemblance to any actual person, company, organization or information is unintentional and purely coincidental.

If your license to EventPro Software is terminated, you must destroy all copies of this document, as well as follow the other conditions set forth in the relevant license agreement.

Please report errors or submit suggestions regarding the Installation Guide content to Manual@EventPro.net

For questions related to program functionality or technical issues, please contact the EventPro Support Department

For questions about purchasing, contact an EventPro Solutions Consultant

Index

- A -

active directory create group 97, 163 group, assigned security role 227 group, create 97, 163 network installation 162 security role, assign to group 227 sync with eventpro 230

- C -

Citrix

add account to Citrix 15 add apps to StoreFront 35 add apps to Workspace 17 Citrix Receiver, discontinued 9 Citrix StoreFront. access 29 Citrix Workspace app, run 15 Citrix Workspace, new 9 desktop, activate 37 install desktop 13 install mobile 56 options 8 run EventPro, StoreFront 40 run EventPro, Workspace app 19 upgrade Receiver to Workspace 9 cloud access software 2 Citrix options 8 Citrix StoreFront, access 29 Citrix Workspace, run 15 Citrix, add apps 17 database conversion 2 database conversion, enterprise 3 database conversion, standard 2 EventPro, exit 51 Gateway 26 install Citrix 13 install Citrix, mobile 56 log in, Citrix Workspace app 22 log in, Gateway 44 mobile device, access from 56 password policy 50 password, change 50 run EventPro, StoreFront 40 run EventPro, Workspace app 19

system requirements 8 update application 55

- D -

data updater 77, 113, 183, 245 install run 79, 115, 185, 248 database conversion for cloud 2 conversion for cloud, enterprise 3 conversion for cloud. standard 2 82, 118, 188, 250 restore rights, assign to users 125, 195 desktop shortcuts 288

- | -

installation 227 active directory group, assign security role active directory group, create 97, 163 active directory, sync 230 admin, create company 160, 224, 278 admin, create contacts 160, 278 admin, create security roles 155, 273 158, 276 admin, create users admin, edit security role 226 admin, first login 153, 223, 271 admin, set default account 225 create active directory group 97, 163 data updater, install 77, 113, 183, 245 data updater, run 79, 115, 185, 248 database rights, assign 125. 195 default account, admin set 225 download software 69, 112, 182, 232 EventPro Cloud 1 EventPro On-Prem 1 141, 211, 265 folder, share install eventpro to server 135, 206, 260 install eventpro to workstation 147, 217, 265 install eventpro, standalone 89 internal company, admin create 160, 224, 278 internal contacts, admin create 160.278 login admin, first 153, 223, 271 login user, first 160, 229, 278 login, first 94 network, active directory integration 162 network, sql authentication 231 network, windows authentication 96 on-prem edition 66 on-prem options 66

installation on-prem requirements 66 on-prem, active directory integration 67 on-prem, authentication modes 67 on-prem, install types 67 on-prem, system requirements 67 82, 118, 188, 250 restore database security role, assign to active directory group 227 server, install eventpro to 135, 206, 260 sql server, configure 73, 109, 179, 238 sql server, install 70, 105, 175, 234 sql user, change 257 sql user, create 241 standalone 68 update software 291 user, first login 160, 229, 278 users, created by admin 158, 276 workstation, install eventpro to 147, 217, 265 installation type network, active directory integration 162 network, sql authentication 231 network, windows authentication 96 standalone 68 installation, cloud database conversion 2 enterprise database conversion 3 standard database conversion 2

- L -

license update 288 login admin, first after install 153, 223, 271 cloud password, change 50 cloud, Citrix Workspace app 22 cloud, Gateway 44 first after install 94 password policy, cloud 50 user, first after install 160, 229, 278

- N -

network update software 291

- S -

security role active directory group, assign to 227 admin, create after install 155, 273

admin, edit 226 assign to active directory group 227 security user admin, create after install 158, 276 server install eventpro to 135, 206, 260 software download 69, 112, 182, 232 sql authentication network installation 231 sql server configure 73, 109, 179, 238 70, 105, 175, 234 install user, change 257 241 user, create system requirements cloud 8

- U -

update cloud application 55 network installation 291 user admin, create after install 158, 276

- W -

windows authentication network installation 96 workstation install eventpro to 147, 217, 265

EventPro Software Installation Guide

© 2021 EventPro Software/Profit Systems Inc.